

# User's Manual for HIMOS Series



www.ditel.es

### COPYRIGHT NOTICE

This manual is a publication of Ditel and is provided for use by its customers only. The contents of the manual are copyrighted by Ditel; reproduction in whole or in part, for use other than in support of Ditel equipment, is prohibited without the specific written permission of Ditel.

### SERVICE

If service is required then pack the unit in its original packaging container or, if unavailable, any suitable rigid container. If a substitute container is used, surround the unit with shock absorbing material; damage in shipment is not covered by the warranty. Include a letter with the unit describing the difficulty and Hardware Revision and Software Version. Send to the following address:

> DITEL (Diseños y Tecnología, S.A.) Poligono Industrial Les Guixeres C/ Xarol, 8-C 08915 Badalona, SPAIN

All returns will be tested to verify customer claims of noncompliance with the product warranty. Improper return packaging, which makes verification impossible, will void the warranty. If noncompliance is verified and is not due to customer abuse or the other exceptions described with product warranty, Ditel will, at its option, repair or replace the Product returned to it, freight prepaid, which fail to comply with the foregoing warranty, provided Ditel is notified of such noncompliance within the one-year warranty period.

### ASSISTANCE

This manual is designed to provide the necessary information for trouble-free installation and operation of your new HIMOS Series. However, if you need assistance, please call DITEL at (00 34) 93 339 47 58 or contact at himos@ditel.es

### MANUAL REVISION

If you contact us in reference to this manual, please include the following document number Name : User Manual For HIMOS

Name	:	User Manı
Document	:	30727306
Revision	:	2.0

Revision Number	Document Number	Date	Description
1.1	30727306	02.04.07	First Release
2.0	30727306	23.01.08	Converted to SW v.3.12

## Warranty Certificate

For New product: This product is warranted against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of 36 months from the date of shipment to Buyer.

For Rectified Products: Any product that will be replaced will have Warranty for 6 months or upto Original Product Warranty period whichever is greater.

The warranty is limited to repair or replacement of the defective unit at the option of the manufacturer. This warranty is void if the product has been altered, misused, dismantled, or otherwise abused.

ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, ARE EXCLUDED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

MAINTENANCE & SERVICE : There are no parts that can be serviced by the user. Service should be performed on a unit substitution basis only. Do not attempt to remove, replace or service any printed circuit board, components or any hardware/software related with display product. If problem within the display product occurs, contact the factory for service information or repair.

**NOTE** : DITEL is dedicated to providing complete customer service and customer satisfaction. If you have any comments or criticisms about how to improve the product features/reliability, please make a note of the problem/improvement and notify us. We are always open to new ideas and improvements. So please let us know your ideas and comments.

## **IMPORTANT**

HIMOS Series Products are intended to be operator interfaces, to work with PLCs which actually take control actions. It is assumed that the user is well acquainted with the PLC system being used. Never use HIMOS units to perform emergency STOP applications. It is advised that separate switches be used outside the PLC for ANY emergency Stops.

# Any Mechanical or Electrical Modification to this Unit will void all Warranties.

# Contents

INTROE	DUCTION	1
1.1	Purpose of this manual	2
1.1	.1 HMI Basics	2
1.1	.2 Hardware Requirements	3
1.2	HIMOS Overview	4
1.2	.1 What is a HIMOS series?	4
1.2	.2 How does HIMOS Work?	5
1.2	.3 How does HIMOS Work?	8
1.2	.4 Specifications of HIMOS Series	8
1.2	.5 Comparison Between Keypad Based HIMOS Operator Panels	8
1.2	.6 Comparison Between TouchScreen Based HIMOS Operator Panels	9
МС	DDELS	
	HI12X	11
	HI30X	16
	HI41X	23
	HI570	30
	HI572X/HI573X	31
	HI575/HI576	36
	HI577X/HI578X	37
	HI1200/HI1202	42
HARDW	/ARE	43
2.1	Unpacking The Unit	44
2.2	Managing Electrostatic Discharge	44
2.3	CE Compliance	44
2.4	Environmental Rating	44
2.5	Environmental Consideration	44
2.6	Safety Precaution	45
2.7	Installation Instruction	45
2.7	.1 Panel Cutout for HIMOS Models	46
2.8	Wiring Diagram	48
2.9	Communication Ports	48
<b>BEFOR</b>	E YOU BEGIN	50
3.1	Connecting the HMI to your Computer	51
3.2	Starting HIMOSOFT Software	52
3.2	.1 Installing HIMOSOFT	52
3.2	.2 Steps for starting HIMOSOFT Software	54
3.2	.3 Uninstalling HIMOSOFT Software	54
3.3	Setting Network Configuration	54
<u>USING</u>	HIMOSOFI	<u> </u>
4.1	HIMOS Menu Structure	61
4.1	.1 File Menu	62
4.1	2 Communicate Manu	63
4.1	.3 Communicate Menu	64
4.1	.4 Utilities Menu	65
4.1	.o neip wenu	65
4.2		60

Doc No: 30727306 Revision: 2.0

	4.3	Creating Screens	71
	4.3.1	Protecting HIMOS Application	73
	4.3.2	Protecting HIMOS Screen	73
	4.4	Data Entry Object	74
	4.5	Display Data Object	75
	4.6	Global And Power On Task	75
	4.7	Global Keys	76
	4.8	Screen Keys	78
<u>REP</u>	RESE	ENTING DATA BY OBJECTS AND WIZARDS	<u>79</u>
	5.1	Alphanumeric Objects	80
	5.1.1	Text Object	80
	5.1.2	Data Entry Object	80
	5.1.3	Display Data Object	82
	5.1.4	Time	83
	5.1.5	Date	84
	5.2	Graphic Wizards	87
	5.2.1	Line	87
	5.2.2	Rectangle	87
	5.2.4	Rounded Rectangle	88
	5.2.3	Ellipse	88
	5.2.5	Bargraph	89
	5.2.6	Bitmap	89
	5.3	Wizards	92
	5.3.1	Bit Button	92
	5.3.2	Word Button	95
	5.3.3	Bit Lamp	97
	5.3.4	Word Lamp	100
	5.3.5	Multiple Bargraph	103
	5.3.6	Analog Meter	107
	5.3.7	Real Time Trend	110
	5.3.8	Numeric Keypad	114
	5.3.9	ASCII Keypad	118
TASK	κMΔ	NAGEMENT	121
	6 1	Application Taskl ist	122
	6.2	Scroon Tasklist	122
	63	Kov Tacklist	125
	631	For Keynad Products	125
	632	For Touch scroon Products	120
	0.J.Z	Description of Tasks	120
	0.4	Gete Screen	120
		Goto Next Screen	120
	•	Goto Provious Screen	129
	•		129
	•	Add a Constant Value To Tor	129
	•	Add a Constant Value To Tag	130
	•	Add Tag P To Tag A	101
	•	Auu lay D TO lay A Subtract Tag D from Tag A	132
	•		132
	•		133
	•		133
	•	Copy lag B to lag A	134
	•	loggie bit	134

Doc No: 30727306 Revision: 2.0

•	Swap Tag A and Tag B	135
•	Copy Tag to STR	135
•	Copy tag to LED	136
•	Delay	137
•	Wait	137
•	Set RTC Come BLO Block to UMOD Block	137
•		138
•	Print Data	138
•	Copy FIMOS Block to FIMOS/PLC Block	138
•	Copy RTC to PLC Block	139
•	Kove' Specific Tasks	140
	Reys Specific Tasks Execute PLC Logic Block	140
		143
<u>03110</u> 7 1	LANGUAGES	144
7.1	1 File Menu	145
7.1	2 Edit Menu	145
7 1	3 View Menu	140
7.1	4 Help Menu	148
7.2	Multi-Language Text Wizard	148
7.2	1 Configure Languages	149
7.2	2 Displaying Multiple Languages in Unit	151
DOWNL	OADING AND UPLOADING FROM UNIT	152
8.1	Upload	153
8.2	Download	155
8.3	Error Catalog	156
ALARM	S	<u>158</u>
9.1	Define Alarm	159
9.1	.1 Alarm Definition	159
9.1	.2 Alarm Object	160
TREND	ING	<u>162</u>
10.	1 Real Time Trend	163
10.	2 Data Logger	167
10.	3 Historical Trend	171
<u>HIMOS</u>	FEATURES	177
11.	1 PLC Logic Block	178
11.	2 Ladder Instruction Details	179
11.	2.1 Input Instruction	180
11.	2.2 Transition	181
11.	2.3 Output Instructions	182
11.	2.4 Limers	183
11.	2.5 Counters	190
11.	2.0 Data Compare	195
11. 	2.7 Wath Operations	199
11. 	2.0 Data MOVE	206
11.	2.3 SHILLIISUUCUUU 2.10 Potato	207
11.	2.10 NUIALE 2.11 Logarithm	210
11.	2.11 Euganum 2.12 Data Conversion	217
11.	2.12 Data Conversion 2.13 Skin Block	210
		213

Doc No: 30727306 Revision: 2.0

	240
11.2.14 End Block	219
11.3 To-Point Linearization	219
11.4 PID Controller 14.5 Llink Speed Counter/Internunte	222
11.5 High Speed Counter/Interrupts	227
11.6 High Speed limer	234
11.7 PWM Configuration	238
11.8 Pulse Output	241
11.9 Analog Totalizer	247
11.10 Analog Configuration	249
PRINTING	255
12.1 Printing from HIMOS unit	256
12.2 Printing from HIMOSOFT Software	257
12.3 Printer Port Setup	258
MISCELLANEOUS	<u>259</u>
13.1 HIMOS Memory Status	260
13.2 Font Editor	261
13.3 Associate a Screen	264
13.4 Real Time Clock	265
13.5 On Line Ladder Monitoring	267
13.6 On Line Screen Monitoring	272
13.7 Convert Application	279
13.8 Ethernet Settings	280
DIAGNOSTICS & MAINTENANCE	289
14.1 Diagnostics	290
14.1.1 Frase Keys	290
14.1.2 Touchscreen calibration	291
14.2 Maintenance	291
	201
AFFLINDIA A Communication Cable Diagrams	292
	295
	295
2 AD SEC DI L'EDINIOS UNIT 2 ADOMATEDO / EDINIOS UNIT	294
	295
	290
	297
6 BAUMULLER DRIVE(RS485 4-WIRE) TO HIMOS UNIT	298
/ BAUMULLER DRIVE(RS484 2-WIRE) TO HIMOS UNIT	299
8 CONTROL TECHNIQUES TO HIMOS UNIT	300
9 DANFOSS DRIVE TO HIMOS UNIT	301
10 DELTA TO HIMOS UNIT (EC-P-044-00)	302
11 FATEK PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	303
12 GE90 SERIES PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	304
13 GE90 SERIES SNP-X PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	305
14 IDEC MICRO3 TO HIMOS UNIT	306
15 IDEC MICROSMART PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	307
16 KEYENEC KV PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	308
17 KOYO DL205 PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	309
18 LG MASTER K SERIES PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	310
19 MENTOR DRIVE PORT TO HIMOS UNIT	311
20 MENTOR DRIVE PORT TO HIMOS UNIT	312
21 MITUBISHI FX SERIES PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	313
22 MITUBISHI FX0 PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	314

23	OMRON CQM PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	315
24	OMRON CQM / CPM CMOS PORT TO HIMOS UNIT	316
25	SIEMENS STEP 7 MICRO(S7-200) PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	317
26	SIEMENS-S7 300 SERIES PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	318
27	TOSHIBA T1 PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	319
28	TOSHIBA T2 PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	320
29	TOSHIBA T1 LINK PORT TO HIMOS UNIT	321
30	TOSHIBA T2 LINK PORT TO HIMOS UNIT	322
31	TOSHIBA INVERTER S SERIES TO HIMOS UNIT	323
32	UNITELWAY(07/37/57) PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	324
33	TWIDO PLC TO HIMOS UNIT	325
В	IBM Cables	326
1	IBM Cable for HIMOS	326
С	List Of Features	327
D	List of Supported Devices	330
Е	Technical Support	331
FRE	QUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS	<u>332</u>
16.1	Frequently Asked Questions	333

### **INTRODUCTION**

In this chapter. . . .

- Purpose of this manual HMI Basics Hardware Configuration
- HIMOS Overview
  - What is HIMOS series HMI? How does HIMOS work? HIMOS Specifications

### 1.1 Purpose of this manual

Thank you for purchasing HIMOS Series Products from DITEL. HIMOS Series Products are versatile operator interfaces with Microsoft® Windows based configuration Software.

This Manual explains the operation of the HIMOS Series and how to implement available features using the HIMOSOFT Software. This manual will help you to install, configure and operate your HIMOS product.

### 1.1.1 HMI Basics

Operator Interface Terminals (HMIs) provide much more versatility than traditional mechanical control panels. An HMI allows a plant floor operator to monitor current conditions of a control system and, if necessary, to initiate a change in the operation of the system. HMIs connect to programmable logic controllers (PLCs) typically through the serial communications port. The HMI can be programmed to monitor and/or change current values stored in the data memory of the PLC.

Some HMIs use touch screen displays while others use a PCB based keypad. PCB based keypads are best used in applications in which the keypad is likely to become dirty. A touch screen HMI provides much more flexibility than typical PCB based keypad displays. Keys can be created in a touch screen HMI that can be made visible only when needed. The HIMOS Series are available in graphics display based HMIs.

### What is a Project?

A project is an user created application in HIMOSOFT Software. A project contains information such as HIMOS model, Network Configuration, Screen information, Task information etc.

#### What is a Screen?

A screen is a visual representation of objects placed on the HMI screen. Any partially sized window is usually referred to as a popup screen or window. The user can create his customized screen according to his requirements. Popup windows can also appear on the HMI display by pressing buttons on the touch screen. The maximum number of screens in an application is only limited by the application memory size. A more in depth discussion on screens is covered in chapter 4.

### What is an Object?

An object placed on HMI screen can perform actions such as displaying text messages, writing a value to a PLC register, or displaying an alarm. An object can be classified as a text or graphical object.

A text object is used to display the text on the HMI and can also used to perform some action. For example, a data entry object tells the HMI to continuously monitor a PLC register and allows the user to change the value in the register. Some objects can display graphics whose shape depends on the value of a register. These objects may also change the value of a PLC tag. An example is a Bit Button Object that creates a graphic object on the HMI. When pressed, it activates a bit in the PLC.

### 1.1.2 Hardware Requirements

The following basis PC hardware configuration is needed to configure and operate your HIMO-SOFT Software.

DEVICE	MINIMUM REQUIREMENT
IBM Compatible PC with Pentium Processor	266MHz Pentium II® or higher Pentium Compatible CPU
Operating System	Windows ® 2000 and above
System RAM	At least 64 Megabytes of RAM, more memory generally improves responsiveness
Hard Disk	150 MB Free Memory Space
VGAMonitorColourSettingResolution	800 X 600 with 24 bit True Color
Serial Port	Serial Port for Downloading
Mouse	Microsoft <sup>®</sup> Mouse or compatible pointing device
Keyboard	Required

These are the minimum system requirements for running the HIMOS application.

### 1.2 HIMOS Overview

### 1.2.1 What is a HIMOS series?

HIMOS Series operator interfaces provide Human-Machine Interface to the Programmable Logic Controller. These HMIs communicate with PLCs using their serial communications ports.

Configuration of HIMOS:

Each HIMOS unit has to be configured using the HIMOSOFT Software before connecting it to the PLC.



Normal Operation:

Connect HIMOS unit to PLC using the correct PLC-UNIT cable. The HIMOS HMI can communicate with any device without making any additional hardware settings on the unit.



### 1.2.2 How does HIMOS Work?

The HIMOS follows a specific sequence for performing the tasks defined by the user in the application. The sequence is as shown below:







### 1.2.3 How does HIMOS Work?

The HIMOS unit has both HMI capabilities as well as programmable logic features. The user can implement PLC logic using standard ladder logic programming. The HIMOS unit has four high speed counters (25 kHz each), hundreds of timers and counters, thousands of internal coils, retentive and nonretentive memory registers and PID functionality. A PLC task can be executed on power up, during continuous scanning, when a specific screen is showing, or when a specific wizard event occurs. It has as many as 28 digital inputs, 16 digital outputs, and up to 4 analog inputs and 2 analog outputs. The number of IO can also be expanded through the use of remote IO modules.

### 1.2.4 Specifications of HIMOS Series

HIMOS series models are Human Machine Interfaces with optional Input/Output capability. HMIs with Input/Output capability are termed as HI125 to HI412, and HI572, HI573, HI577, HI578. HIMOS series HMIs can be powered either from the PLC or from an external power supply.

All of the HIMOS series models have ladder functionality built in.

All HIMOS series models have two serial communication ports. They can communicate with two different PLCs simultaneously. Detailed specifications for each of the models are given in the following section.

### Comparison between keypad based HIMOS Operator Panels

Model		HI125 / HI126	HI300 / HI301 / HI302 / HI303
Display		1.25″ 128 X 64 Pixels	3″ 128 X 64 Pixels
Kove	Function	8	6
Reys	Numeric	0	12
LED'S		0	4
	Total	512 Kb	512 Kb
Memory	Application	120 Kb	120 Kb
	Ladder	62Kb	62 Kb
Data Logging		N.A.	N.A.
Trending		N.A.	N.A.
Alarms		Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical
Recipes		Yes	Yes
Password		Yes	Yes
Dimensions	External Dimensions	48H X 48W X 74D	102H X 183W X 37D
	Panel Cutout	45W X 45H	163W X 77H
I/O		Yes	Yes

### 1.2.5 Comparison Between Touchscreen Based HIMOS Operator Panels

Model		HI410 / HI411 / HI412	HI570	HI572R / HI573R
Display Type	,	4.1" Yellow Backlit LCD Graphi- cal Display	5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Graphical Display	5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Graphical Display
Resolution		192 X 62 Pixels	320 X 240 Pixels	320 X 240 Pixels
Brightness (	Control	Standard Through Pot	Standard Through Pot	Standard Through Pot
Touchscreer	1	Analog Resistive	Analog Resistive	Analog Resistive
	Total	512 Kb	4 Mb	4 Mb
Momory	Application	120 Kb	3 Mb Maximum*	3Mb Maximum*
wentory	Ladder	62Kb	128 Kb	128 Kb
	Data Logging	N.A.	2 Mb*	2 Mb*
Data Logging		N.A.	Yes	Yes
Trending		N.A.	Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical
Alarms		Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical
Recipes		Yes	Yes	Yes
ScreenSaver		N.A.	Yes	Yes
Password	Screen	Yes	Yes	Yes
1 4350014	Application	Yes	Yes	Yes
Dimensions	External Dimensions	ternal 77H X 140W X 32D 136H X 194V		136H X 194W X 59D
	Panel Cutout 132W X 69H		184W X 126H 184W X 126H	
1/0		Yes	No	Yes

\* Note: Total memory can be adjusted among Application memory, Ladder memory and Data logging memory.

Model		HI575 / HI576	HI577 / HI577R / HI578R	HI1200 / HI1202
Display Type	9	5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Graphical Color Display	5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Graphical Color Display	12.1″ TFT CCFL Graphical Color Display
Resolution		320 X 240 Pixels	320 X 240 Pixels	800 X 600 Pixels
Brightness (	Control	Standard Through Pot	Standard Through Pot	Standard Through Pot
Touchscreer	1	Analog Resistive	Analog Resistive	Analog Resistive
	Total	4 Mb	4 Mb	32 Mb
Momory	Application	3 Mb Maximum*	3Mb Maximum*	25 Mb Maximum*
метогу	Ladder	128 Kb	128 Kb	2 Mb
	Data Logging	2 Mb*	2 Mb*	2 Mb*
Data Logging		Yes	Yes	Yes
Trending		Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical
Alarms		Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical	Real Time + Historical
Recipes		Yes	Yes	Yes
ScreenSaver		Yes	Yes	Yes
Password	Screen	Yes	Yes	Yes
1 4350014	Application	Yes	Yes	Yes
Dimensions	External Dimensions	136H X 194W X 59D	136H X 194W X 59D	246H X 312W X 48D
	Panel Cutout	184W X 126H	184W X 126H	295W X 227H
1/0		No	Yes	No

### HI12X



### Models Included In HI12X:

1. HI125 / HI125P

2. HI126 / HI126P

Model		HI125 / HI125P	HI126 / HI126P
High Speed Counters			
Number of Counters		4	4
Resolution		32 bit	32 bit
Maximum Frequency		25 KHz @ 24V DC	25 KHz @ 24V DC
Minimum Pulse		20 Microsecond	20 Microsecond
Digital Inputs			
Number of Inputs		8	6
Input Voltage		Normal Input: 24V DC (28V Max )	Normal Input: 24V DC (28V Max )
		High Speed: 24V DC (28V Max )	High Speed: 24V DC (28V Max )
Input Current		Normal Input : 4,89 mA	Normal Input : 4,89 mA
mput current		High Speed: 10 mA	High Speed: 10 mA
Input Impodance		Normal Input: 4K7	Normal Input: 4K7
mput impedance		High Speed: 2K3	High Speed: 2K3
Logic "0" Voltage		0 to 4V	0 to 4V
Logic "1" Voltage		14 to 28V	14 to 28V
Universal Analog Inputs	5		
Number of Inputs		0	1
Resolution		-	12 bit
Туре		-	mV (0-50 / 0-100) TC, RTD mA (0-20 / 4-20)
Digital Outputs			
Number of outputs		8	6
Output Typo	NPN	Open Collector	Open Collector
	PNP	Open Collector	Open Collector
Isolation		Yes	Yes
Max Load Curront	NPN	300mA	300mA
	PNP	500mA	500mA
ON Voltage Drop		0,4 V or Less	0,4 V or Less
Analog Outputs			
Number of outputs		0	1
Output Type		-	4-20 mA
Resolution		-	12 bit

### These specifications are common for all HI12X models.

POWER SUPPLY		MISCELLANEOUS	
Voltage rating	24V DC ± 10%	External Dimensions	48H X 48W X 74D
Power rating	2W Maximum	Panel Cutout	45.00 X 45.00 mm
APROVALS	CE Certified	Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
BEZEL	IP65 Rated Keypad	Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
KEYPAD		Operating Temperature	0°C to 50°C
Number of keys	8 Keys	Storage Temperature	-25°C to 80°C
MEMORY		Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Total Memory	512 Kb	Clock (RTD)	Real Time Function (Date & Time)
Application Memory	120 Kb	Humidity	10% to 90% (Non Condensing)
Ladder Memory	62 Kb	Inmunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Data Registers	1000	Inmunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Retentive Registers	1400	Inmunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
System Registers	64	Inmunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
System Coils	100	Emission	EN55011 CISPRA
Internal Coils	5000	DISPLAY	
Input Coils	100	Туре	Monochrome Graphical Backlit LCD
Output Coils	100	Resolution	128 X 64 Pixel (1.25″)
Internal Registers	313	COMMUNICATION	
Input Registers	7	Number of Ports	2
Output Registers	7	Туре	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS
Timer Registers	128		
Counter Registers	178		

These specifications are common for all HI12X Models.

1. Digital Input Connection (Sink)



2. Digital Input Connection (Source)



3. High Speed Counter Input Connection (Sink) HI125 / HI125P



4. High Speed Counter Input Connection (Source)





HI126 / HI126P



HI126 / HI126P



HI126 / HI126P



HI126P (PNP)

¥1

¥3

¥4

YD

OP

VDD

IO+

DIP COM

CS

AIN

6

6

ര

뉶

24VDC

L2 ¥2

15

### 5.Digital Output Connection (See Note 2)





### HI126 / HI126P



9. Analog Input RTD Connection

### HI126 / HI126P



## **11.PWM Connection**



Doc No: 30727306 Revision: 2.0

7. Analog Input Current Connection HI126 /HI126P

Ø

24VDC

HI125P (PNP)

¥2

¥3

XI

X2

X3

X4

X5

X6

X7

COM

OP



**10. Analog Output Connection** HI126 / HI126P







COM

CS

AIN





8. Analog Input Thermocouple Connection HI126 / HI126P



### Note 1:

HI126 (NPN)

¥3

.

.

COM

CS

AIN

6

ത

0

6

0

7-24 DC

L2

1.5

Y1

¥2

¥4

YD

OP COM

See.

10+

ANA

• Load L0 to L7 for Digital model and Loads Lo to L5 for Analog\_model are DC Loads (50mA maximum).

• Diagrams 1 to 5 are applicable for HI125.

• All Diagrams (Analog wiring diagrams) are applicable for HI126

model. Note 2:

Outputs Y0 and Y1 (In Analog as well as Digital models) can be used as either Normal Outputs or **PWM Outputs**.

### HI30X



### Models Included In HI30X:

- 1. HI300 / HI300P
- 2. HI301 / HI301P
- 3. HI302 / HI302P
- 4. HI303 / HI303P

Model		HI300 / HI300P	HI301 / HI301P	HI302 / HI302P	HI303 / HI303P
High Speed Coun	ters				
Number of Counter	ers	4	4	4	4
Counter at Input		X1,X2,X3,X4	X1,X2,X3,X4	X1,X2,X3,X4	X1,X2,X3,X4
Resolution		32 Bits	32 Bits	32 Bits	32 Bits
Maximum Frequei	псу	25 KHz @ 24 VDC	25 KHz @ 24 VDC	25 KHz @ 24 VDC	25 KHz @ 24 VDC
Minimum Pulse		20 Microsecond	20 Microsecond	20 Microsecond	20 Microsecond
Digital Inputs				•	
Number of Inputs		16	16	16	16
Input Voltage		24 VDC (Max 28VDC)	24 VDC (Max 28VDC)	24 VDC (Max 28VDC)	24 VDC (Max 28VDC)
Input Current	Norm.	4.89 mA	4.89 mA	4.89 mA	4.89 mA
@ 24VDC	H.S.	10 mA	10 mA	10 mA	10 mA
Innut Imnodanco	Norm.	4K7	4K7	4K7	4K7
mput impedance	H.S.	2K3	2К3	2K3	2K3
Logic "0" Voltage		0 to 4V	0 to 4V	0 to 4V	0 to 4V
Logic "1" Voltage		14 to 28V	14 to 28V	14 to 28V	14 to 28V
Digital Outputs					
Number of Output	ts	12	12	12	12
Output type	NPN	Open Collector	10 Relay + 2 OC	Open Collector	10 Relay + 2 OC
Oulpul type	PNP	Open Collector	10 Relay + 2 OC	Open Collector	10 Relay + 2 OC
Isolation		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Output Curront	NPN	300mA	300mA	300mA	300mA
Oulpul Current	PNP	500mA	500mA	500mA	500mA
On Voltage Drop		0.4V or Less	0.4V or Less	0.4V or Less	0.4V or Less
Analog Inputs					
Number of Inputs		0	0	4	4
Resolution		-	-	12 Bit	12 Bit
Туре		N.A.	N.A.	mV (0-50 / 0-100) mA (0-20 / 4-20) TC, RTD	mV (0-50 / 0-100) mA (0-20 / 4-20) TC, RTD
Analog Outputs					
Number of output	s	0	0	2	2
Type of output		N.A.	N.A.	Current (4-20mA)	Current (4-20mA)
Resolution		N.A.	N.A.	12 Bit	12 Bit

### This specifications are common for all HI30X models

		i -	
POWER SUPPLY		MISCELLANEOUS	
Voltage rating	24V DC ± 10%	External Dimensions	101H X 183W X 37D
Power rating	3W Maximum	Panel Cutout	77.00 X 163.00 mm
APROVALS	CE Certified	Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
BEZEL	IP65 Rated Keypad	Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
KEYPAD		Operating Temperature	0°C to 50°C
Number of keys	6 Function 12 Numeric	Storage Temperature	-25°C to 80°C
MEMORY		Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Total Memory	512 Kb	Clock (RTC)	Real Time Function (Date & Time)
Application Memory	120 Kb	Humidity	10% to 90% (Non Condensing)
Ladder Memory	62 Kb	Inmunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Data Registers	1000	Inmunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Retentive Registers	1400	Inmunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
System Registers	64	Inmunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
System Coils	100	Emission	EN55011 CISPRA
Internal Coils	5000	DISPLAY	
Input Coils	100	Туре	Monochrome Graphical Backlit LCD
Output Coils	100	Resolution	128 X 64 Pixel (3″)
Internal Registers	313	COMMUNICATION	
Input Registers	7	Number of Ports	2
Output Registers	7	Туре	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS
Timer Registers	128		
Counter Registers	178		

### These specifications are common for all HI30X Models.





2. Digital Input (Source) Connection



### 3. High Speed Counter Connection (Sink)



### 4. High Speed Counter Connection (Source)









### 5. Analog Input (Voltage) Connection



7. Analog Input (Thermocouple) Connection

HI302/HI302P & HI303/HI303P TC TC TC 6 7 8 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 9 E. 1 00000000 000 000 0 0 0 cni 🛛 4 7 8 9 19 10 10 ANA ANA ANA ANA ANA CS3 ş AINA ANA ANA ANA ANA trajo fy Ed/ B Zd/J BolenA Ld Doleun

HI303/HI303P

#### 9. Digital Output (Relay) Connection



### 8. Analog Input (RTD) Connection HI302/HI302P & HI303/HI303P

R	TDIn	pu 1	t M	ł	rri T	) Ir	4	t F	Т	) In	put M	l f	nt T	) In	linput ∳_	
	4	6	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	17 18 19	
	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L		L	L
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	~	¢n.	đ	1			ő	=	12	13	14	i,	ā	17	i iii	19
	24	AIN4	COM	mA4	683	AIN3	COM	mA3	CS2	AIN2	COM	mA2	22	AINI	COM	mA1
	1	d/I f	iolen	٨	\$	d/1 6	olen	1		Zd/	Dole	nA		1.d/	Boja	smA

### HI301/HI301P



-Կի

24VDC

Doc No: 30727306 Revision: 2.0

24VDC





#### Note 1:

For Analog output, enter the digital count for respective output register and observe the mA output on multimeter. It should be as per following table.

Entered count	mA output
0 1024 2048 3072	4 8 12 16
4095	20

ī

### HI41X



### Models Included In HI41X:

1. HI410 / HI410P 2. HI411 / HI411P 3. HI412 / HI412P

Model		HI410 / HI410P	HI411 / H	HI411P	HI412 / HI412P
High Speed Counters					
Number of Counters		4	4		4
Counter at input		X1,X2,X3,X4	X1,X2,>	(3,X4	X1,X2,X3,X4
Resolution		32 Bits	32 B	its	32 Bits
Maximum Frequency		25 KHz @ 24 VDC	25 KHz @	24 VDC	25 KHz @ 24 VDC
Minimum Pulse		20 Microsecond	20 Micros	second	20 Microsecond
Digital Inputs					
Number of Inputs		16	12		16
Input Voltage		24 VDC (Max 28 VDC)	24 VDC (Ma	x 28 VDC)	24 VDC (Max 28 VDC)
Input Current @ 241/DC	Norm.	4.89 mA	4.89	mA	4.89 mA
input current @ 24VDC	H.S.	10 mA	10 n	ηA	10 mA
land have a damage	Norm.	4K7	4K	7	4K7
Input Impedance	H.S.	2K3	2K.	3	2K3
Logic "0" Voltage	·	0 to 4V	0 to	4V	0 to 4V
Logic "1" Voltage		14 to 28V	14 to .	28V	14 to 28V
Digital Outputs					
Number of Outputs		12	8		12
Output Tupo	NPN	<b>Open</b> Collector	Open Co	llector	Open Collector
Oulpul Type	PNP	<b>Open</b> Collector	Open Co	llector	Open Collector
Isolation		Yes	Ye	S	Yes
Output Current	NPN	300 mA	300 г	nA	300 mA
ouipui curreni	PNP	500 mA	500 r	nA	500 mA
On Voltage Drop		0,4V or Less	0,4V or	Less	0,4V or Less
Analog Inputs					
Number of Inputs		0	6		2
Resolution		N.A.	12 Bit	10 Bit	12 Bit
Туре		N.A.	2 x Univ(*)	4 x mA	2 x Univ
Analog Outputs					
Number of Outputs		0	1		0
Туре		N.A.	Current (4 Voltage (	-20 mA) 0-10 V)	N.A.
Resolution		N.A.	12 E	Bit	N.A.

(\*)UNIV = mV(0-50 / 0-100), TC, RTD, mA (0-20 / 4-20)

### These specifications are common for all HI41X Models

POWER SUPPLY		MISCELLANEOUS	
Voltage rating	24V DC ± 10%	External Dimensions	77H X 140W X32D
Power ratin	3.5W Maximum	Panel Cutout	132.00 X 69.00 mm
APROVALS	CE Certified	Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
BEZEL	IP65 Rated	Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
KEYPAD		Operating Temperature	0°C to 50°C
Туре	Touch Screen	Storage Temperature	-25°C to 80°C
MEMORY		Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Total Memory	512 Kb	Clock (RTC)	Real Time Function (Date & Time)
Application Memory	120 Kb	Humidity	10% to 90% (Non Condensing)
Ladder Memory	62 Kb	Inmunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Data Registers	1000	Inmunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Retentive Registers	1400	Inmunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
System Registers	64	Inmunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
System Coils	100	Emission	EN55011 CISPRA
Internal Coils	5000	DISPLAY	
Input Coils	100	Туре	Monochrome Graphical Backlit LCD
Output Coils	100	Resolution	4 Lines of 20 Characters
Internal Registers	313	Led's	8
Input Registers	7	COMMUNICATION	
Output Registers	7	Number of Ports	2
Timer Registers	128	Туре	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS
Counter Registers	178		



### 2. Digital Input (Source) Connection



### 3. High Speed Counter Connection (Sink)



### 4. High Speed Counter Connection (Source)



#### 5. Analog Input Voltage Connection

6. Analog Input Current Connection for Channel 1 to 4









### 7. Analog Input Thermocouple Connection



### 8. Analog Input RTD Connection



### 9. Digital Output Open Collector Connection



### HI410 (NPN)

	OP VDD	30		. • •	39	O/P VDD
12.54	O/P COM	29	2 - 1	<b>.</b> • 1	38	O/P COM
<u>D</u> -	- Y5	28	. • •	(	37	¥11
6	- ¥4	27			36	¥10
<u>_</u>	— Y3	26		. • •	35	¥9
	O/P COM	25	-	<b>C</b> • 1	34	O/P COM
<u>_</u>	- Y2	24		. • •	33	¥8
<u>_</u>	Y1	23		. • •	32	¥7
<u>_</u>	YO	22			31	Y6

HI410P (PNP)

### HI411 (NPN)



### HI411P (PNP)



#### HI412 (NPN)



### HI412P (PNP)

24VDC

Ŧ



### **10. Analog Output Voltage Connection**

### **11. Analog Output Current Connection**

HI411/HI411P

#### 0 14 VO+ 13 ANA 0 0 12 10+ 0 11 mA6 Analo 10 ANA 0 0 AINB 9 HP6 Ø 8 CS6 0 7 mA5 Ø 6 COM Analog 0 5 AIN5 WP5 0 4 CS5

## HI411/HI411P


#### 12. PWM Connection



## HI410P (PNP)

DC	OP VDD	30	. • (		39	O/P VDD
-	O/P COM	29		1.	38	O/P COM
	¥5	28	1		37	Y11
	¥4	27			36	Y10
	¥3	26	-		35	¥9
	O/P COM	25		[· ·	34	O/P COM
	¥2	24	C • 1	1 -	33	¥8
0	¥1	23	1.1	1.	32	¥7
-@-	YO	22			31	¥6

#### HI411 (NPN)



## HI411P (PNP)









## HI570

Power Supply	
Voltage Rating	24 VDC ± 10%
Power Rating	10W Maximum
Approvals	CE Certified
Bezel	IP65 Rated
Memory	
Total Memory	4 Mb
Application Memory	3264 Kb
Ladder Memory	128 Kb
Data Register	1000
Retentive Register	1400
System Register	64
System Coil	100
Internal Coil	5000
Input Coil	100
Output Coil	100
Internal Register	313
Input Register	7
Output Register	7
Timer Register	128
Counter Register	178
Display	Monochrome Graphical Display
Туре	5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Display
Resolution	320 X 240 Pixels
Touch Screen	Analog Resistive
Communication	
Number of Ports	2
Туре	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS



Miscellaneous	
External dimension	136H X 194W X 59D
Panel Cutout	184.00 X 126.00
Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
Operating Temperature	0° C to 50° C
Storage Temperature	-25° C to 80° C
Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Clock (RTC)	Real Time Clock Function (Date & Time)
Humidity	10% to 90% (Noncondensing)
Immunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Immunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Immunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
Immunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
Emission	EN55011 CISPRA

### HI572X / HI573X



#### Models Included:

1. HI572R / HI572RP 2. HI573R / HI573RP

Model		HI572R / HI572RP	HI573R / HI573RP
High Speed Counters			
Number of Counters		4	4
Counter at input		X1,X2,X3,X4	X1,X2,X3,X4
Resolution		32 Bits	32 Bits
Maximum Frequency		25 KHz @ 24 VDC	25 KHz @ 24 VDC
Minimum Pulse		20 Microsecond	20 Microsecond
Digital Inputs			
Number of Inputs		28	28
Input Voltage		24 VDC (Max 28 VDC)	24 VDC (Max 28 VDC)
Input Current @ 24//DC	Norm.	4.89 mA	4.89 mA
input current @ 24VDC	H.S.	10 mA	10 mA
Input Impodance	Norm.	4K7	4K7
mputimpedance	H.S.	2К3	2K3
Logic "0″ Voltage		0 to 4V	0 to 4V
Logic "1" Voltage		14 to 28V	14 to 28V
Digital Outputs			•
Number of Outputs		16	16
<del>.</del>	NPN	14 Relay + 2 OC	14 Relay + 2 OC
Ошриї Туре	PNP	14 Relay + 2 OC	14 Relay + 2 OC
Isolation		Yes	Yes
Output Current	NPN	300 mA	300 mA
ouipui curreni	PNP	500 mA	500 mA
On Voltage Drop		0,4V or Less	0,4V or Less
Analog Inputs			~
Number of Inputs		0	4
Resolution		N.A.	12 Bit
Туре		N.A.	2 x Univ(*)
Analog Outputs			
Number of Outputs		0	2
Туре		N.A.	Current (4-20 mA) Voltage (0-10 V)
Resolution		N.A.	12 Bit

(\*)UNIV = mV(0-50 / 0-100), TC, RTD, mA (0-20 / 4-20)

## These specifications are common for HI572R / HI572RP / HI573R / HI573RP Models

POWER SUPPLY		MISCELLANEOUS	
Voltage rating	24V DC ± 10%	External Dimensions	136H X 194W X 59D
Power ratin	10W Maximum	Panel Cutout	184.00 X 126.00 mm
APROVALS	CE Certified	Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
BEZEL	IP65 Rated	Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
KEYPAD		Operating Temperature	0°C to 50°C
Туре	Touch Screen	Storage Temperature	-25°C to 80°C
MEMORY		Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Total Memory	4 Mb	Clock (RTC)	Real Time Function (Date & Time)
Application Memory	3264 Kb	Humidity	10% to 90% (Non Condensing)
Ladder Memory	128 Kb	Inmunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Data Registers	1000	Inmunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Retentive Registers	1400	Inmunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
System Registers	64	Inmunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
System Coils	100	Emission	EN55011 CISPRA
Internal Coils	5000	DISPLAY	Monochrome Graphical Display
Input Coils	100	Туре	5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Display
Output Coils	100	Resolution	320 x 240 Pixels
Internal Registers	313	Touch Screen	Analog Resistive
Input Registers	7	COMMUNICATION	
Output Registers	7	Number of Ports	2
Timer Registers	128	Туре	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS
Counter Registers	178		

#### 1. Digital Input (Sink) Connection



3. High Speed counter (Sink) Connection



5. Digital Output (O.C.) Connection





#### 2. Digital Input (Source) Connection



4. High Speed counter (Source) Connection



## Introduction

6. Digital Output (Relay) Connection (See Note)

04 COL SUPPLY 16 0 RLY POLE 3 0 17 0 8 RLYS COIL SUPPLY (-) 0 1 18 0 RLY 6 PWM 0.P0 18 07 BLY7 PWM OVP 19 0 19 7 P . 0. RLY POLE 4 DO/P COM (-) 20 0 20 . 0. RLYS RLY POLE I 21 0 1 Ø 10 RLYS 10 RLY O 22 Ø 11 Ø 12 1 1.11 11 RLY 10 23 0 HLY 1 1 12 12 RLY POLE 5 24 0 RLY 2 24 Ø 13 Ø 14 RLY POLE 2 25 O 13 RLY 11 25 26 0 14 RLY 12 BLY 3 15 0 15 RLY 13 RLY 4 27 O

8. Analog Input (Current) Connection



10. Analog Input (RTD) Connection





12. Analog Input (Current) Connection



NOTE:Same connections are possible for the remaining outputs.Connect RLY3-RLY4 through RLY POLE2L0 to L13 are AConnect RLY5-RLY7 through RLY POLE3L0 to L13 are AConnect RLY8-RLY10 through RLY POLE4L0 to L13 are DConnect RLY11-RLY13 through RLY POLE5L0 to L13 are D

L0 to L13 are AC loads in case of relay connections L0 to L13 are DC Loads (300mA NPN, 500mA PNP)

7. Analog Input (Voltage) Connection



9. Analog Input (Thermocouple) Connection

CS3 61 Q

61



CS1 72 0

11. Analog Input (Voltage) Connection

## HI575 / HI576

Power Supply			
Voltage Rating		24 VDC ± 10%	
Power Rating		10W Maximum	
Approvals		CE Certified	
Bezel		IP65 Rated	
Memory			
Total Memory		4 Mb	
Application Memo	ry	3Mb Maximum	
Ladder Memory		128 Kb	
Data Registe		1000	
Retentive Register	r	1400	
System Register		64	
System Coil		100	
Internal Coil		5000	
Input Coil		100	
Output Coil		100	
Internal Register		313	
Input Register		7	
Output Register		7	
Timer Register		128	
Counter Register		178	
Display		Graphical Color Display	
Туре		5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Display	
Resolution		320 X 240 Pixels	
Touch Screen		Analog Resistive	
Communication			
Number of Dorts	HI 575	2	
	HI 576	3	
_	HI 575	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS	
lype	HI 576	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS / ETHERNET	



Miscellaneous	
External dimension	136H X 194W X 59D
Panel Cutout	184.00 X 126.00
Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
Operating Temperature	0° C to 50° C
Storage Temperature	-25° C to 80° C
Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Clock (RTC)	Real Time Clock Function (Date & Time)
Humidity	10% to 90% (Noncondensing)
Immunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Immunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Immunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
Immunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
Emission	EN55011 CISPRA

### HI577X / HI578X



#### Models Included:

- 1. HI577 / HI577P
- 2. HI577R / HI577RP 3. HI578R / HI578RP
- 3. HI5/8R / HI5/8RP

## Introduction

Model		HI577 / HI577P HI577R / HI577RP		HI578R / HI578RP		
High Speed Counters						
Number of Counters		4	4	4		
Counter at input		X1,X2,X3,X4	X1,X2,X3,X4	X1,X2,X3,X4		
Resolution		32 Bits	32 Bits	32 Bits		
Maximum Frequency		25 KHz @ 24 VDC	25 KHz @ 24 VDC	25 KHz @ 24 VDC		
Minimum Pulse		20 Microsecond	20 Microsecond	20 Microsecond		
Digital Inputs						
Number of Inputs		28	28 28			
Input Voltage		24 VDC (Max 28 VDC)	24 VDC (Max 28 VDC)	24 VDC (Max 28 VDC		
Input Current @ 24//DC	Norm.	4.89 mA	4.89 mA	4.89 mA		
input current @ 24vDC	H.S.	10 mA	10 mA	10 mA		
Input Impodance	Norm.	4K7	4K7	4K7		
mputimpedance	H.S.	2К3	2К3	2К3		
Logic "0" Voltage		0 to 4V 0 to 4V		0 to 4V		
Logic "1" Voltage		14 to 28V	14 to 28V 14 to 28V 14 to 28V			
Digital Outputs						
Number of Outputs		16	16	16		
Output Tupo	NPN	16 Open Collector	14 Relay + 2 OC	14 Relay + 2 OC		
	PNP	16 Open Collector	14 Relay + 2 OC	14 Relay + 2 OC		
Isolation		Yes	Yes	Yes		
Output Current	NPN	300 mA	300 mA	300 mA		
ouipui current	PNP	500 mA	500 mA	500 mA		
On Voltage Drop		0,4V or Less	0,4V or Less	0,4V or Less		
Analog Inputs						
Number of Inputs		4	4	0		
Resolution		12 Bit.	12 Bit	N.A.		
Туре		4 x Univ(*).	4 x Univ(*)	N.A.		
Analog Outputs						
Number of Outputs		2	2	0		
Туре		Current (4-20 mA) Voltage (0-10 V).	Current (4-20 mA) Voltage (0-10 V)	N.A.		
Resolution		12 Bit.	12 Bit	N.A.		

(\*)UNIV = mV(0-50 / 0-100), TC, RTD, mA (0-20 / 4-20)

## These specifications are common for HI577X / HI578X Models

POWER SUPPLY		MISCELLANEOUS	
Voltage rating	24V DC ± 10%	External Dimensions	136H X 194W X59D
Power ratin	10W Maximum	Panel Cutout	184.00 X 126.00 mm
APROVALS	CE Certified	Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
BEZEL	IP65 Rated	Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
KEYPAD		Operating Temperature	0°C to 50°C
Туре	Touch Screen	Storage Temperature	-25°C to 80°C
MEMORY		Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Total Memory	4 Mb	Clock (RTC)	Real Time Function (Date & Time)
Application Memory	3264 Kb	Humidity	10% to 90% (Non Condensing)
Ladder Memory	128 Kb	Inmunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Data Registers	1000	Inmunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Retentive Registers	1400	Inmunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
System Registers	64	Inmunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
System Coils	100	Emission	EN55011 CISPRA
Internal Coils	5000	DISPLAY	Graphical Color Display
Input Coils	100	Туре	5.7″ STN CCFL QVGA Display
Output Coils	100	Resolution	320 x 240 Pixels
Internal Registers	313	Touch Screen	Analog Resistive
Input Registers	7	COMMUNICATION	
Output Registers	7	Number of Ports	2
Timer Registers	128	Туре	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS
Counter Registers	178		

#### 1. Digital Input (Sink) Connection



3. High Speed counter (Sink) Connection



5. Digital Output (O.C.) Connection





2. Digital Input (Source) Connection



4. High Speed counter (Source) Connection



## Introduction

6. Digital Output (Relay) Connection (See Note)

04 COL SUPPLY 16 0 RLY POLE 3 0 17 0 8 RLYS COIL SUPPLY (-) 0 1 18 0 RLY 6 PWM 0.P0 18 07 BLY7 PWM OVP 19 0 19 7 P . 0. RLY POLE 4 DO/P COM (-) 20 0 20 ۰ 0. RLYS RLY POLE I 21 0 71 1 Ø 10 RLYS 10 RLY O 22 Ø 11 Ø 12 1 1.11 11 RLY 10 23 0 HLY 1 1 12 12 RLY POLE S 24 0 RLY 2 24 Ø 13 Ø 14 RLY POLE 2 25 O 25 13 RLY 11 26 0 14 RLY 12 BLY 3 15 0 15 RLY 13 RLY 4 27 O

8. Analog Input (Current) Connection



10. Analog Input (RTD) Connection





12. Analog Input (Current) Connection



NOTE: Same connections are possible for the remaining outputs. Connect RLY3-RLY4 through RLY POLE2 Connect RLY5-RLY7 through RLY POLE3 Connect RLY8-RLY10 through RLY POLE4 Connect RLY11-RLY13 through RLY POLE5

L0 to L13 are AC loads in case of relay connections L0 to L13 are DC Loads (300mA NPN, 500mA PNP)

7. Analog Input (Voltage) Connection



CS3 61 Q

AN 3 62 O

mA3 64 O

.

C

Thermocouple

61

62

63 ANA 63 0

1 64

1 65

9. Analog Input (Thermocouple) Connection



CSI 72 0

052

73 AIN 1

74 ANA COM

75

76

73 0

74 0

75 0 mA1

76 0

11. Analog Input (Voltage) Connection

## Introduction

### HI1200 / HI1202

Power Supply			
Voltage Rating		24 VDC ± 10%	
Power Rating		20W Maximum	
Approvals		CE Certified	
Bezel		IP65 Rated	
Memory			
Total Memory		32 Mb	
Application Memo	ry	25 Mb	
Ladder Memory		2 Mb	
Compact Flash		256 Mb (Only HI1202)	
Data Register		1000	
Retentive Register	r	1400	
System Register		64	
System Coil		100	
Internal Coil		5000	
Input Coil		100	
Output Coil		100	
Internal Register		313	
Input Register		7	
Output Register		7	
Timer Register		128	
Counter Register		178	
Display		Graphical Color Display	
Туре		12.1″ TFT CCFL Display	
Resolution		800 X 600 Pixels	
Touch Screen		Analog Resistive	
Communication			
Numbor of Dorts	HI1200	2	
	HI1202	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS	
	HI1200	4	
Туре	HI1202	RS232 / RS485 / RS422 / CMOS / USB / ETHERNET	



Miscellaneous	
External dimension	246H X 312W X 47D
Panel Cutout	295.00 X 227.00
Battery	Coin Type, 3V Lithium Battery 614-CR1225FH
Battery Backup	Min. 5 Years for RTC and System Data
Operating Temperature	0° C to 50° C
Storage Temperature	-25° C to 80° C
Mounting Method	Panel Mounting
Clock (RTC)	Real Time Clock Function (Date & Time)
Humidity	10% to 90% (Noncondensing)
Immunity to ESD	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-2
Immunity to Transients	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-4
Immunity to Radiated RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-3
Immunity to Conducted RF	Level 3 as per IEC1000-4-6
Emission	EN55011 CISPRA

## **HARDWARE**

In this chapter. . . .

- Unpacking the unit
- Managing Electrostatic discharge
- CE Compliance
- Environmental Rating
- Environmental Consideration
- Safety Precautions
- Installation Instructions
- Wiring Diagram
- Communication Ports

## 2.1 Unpacking The Unit

Carefully unpack the HMI. Please read all the instructions and cautions that appear on the shipping container. Check that the container includes the mounting clamps, mounting screws, mounting inserts, gasket, and a silica gel bag. The silica gel bag is enclosed to absorb the moisture in the packing. DITEL will not accept responsibility for shortages against the packing list unless notified within 30 days. The unit and its accessories were inspected and tested by DITEL before shipment. All equipment should be in good working order. Examine the product carefully and notify the carrier immediately if any shipping damage is evident. You are responsible for claim negotiations with the carrier. Save the shipping container and packing material in case the equipment needs to be stored, returned to DITEL, or transported for any reason.

## 2.2 Managing Electrostatic Discharge

It is best NOT to remove the rear enclosure of the HMI. When the rear part of the enclosure is removed, the circuitry inside is exposed to possible damage by electrostatic discharge during handling. Minimize the possibility of electrostatic discharge by:

- Discharging personal static by grounding yourself prior to handling the HMI.
- Handling the HMI at a static-free grounded workstation.
- Connecting the frame ground () connector of the HMI to a clean earth ground.
- Placing the HMI in an antistatic bag during transport.

## 2.3 CE Compliance

DITEL products have been tested to confirm to European CE requirements per Council Directive. The European Union created these requirements to ensure conformity among products traded in those countries. Specifically, DITEL products meet or exceed the noise emission and immunity requirements as set in EN55011 (Emission) and IEC1000-4 (Immunity) standards. These products are designed to withstand electrical noise in harsh industrial environment. They also confirm to requirements that limit electrical emission. However this does not guarantee the products will be totally immune from possible malfunction in cases where severe electrical noise occurs. Therefore, we strongly recommend that you follow the guidelines outlined for proper wiring and grounding to ensure the proper operation of the DITEL products.

#### 2.4 Environmental Rating

DITEL Products are rated for IP 65 as per IEC Standards. This means that when HMI is properly mounted on the enclosure, the front enclosure will provide a degree of protection to the inside panel from the dust and low pressure jets of water from all the directions i.e. protection against ingress of water. The HMI must be installed according to the instructions given.

#### 2.5 Environmental Consideration

DITEL products are designed to operate at temperature range from 0-50° C. It is intended primarily for indoor installations and may not be suitable for certain outdoor applications. Avoid installing the DITEL products in environments with severe mechanical vibration or shocks. Do not install the HMI in enclosures with rapid temperature variations or high humidity. Either will cause condensation of water inside the device and eventual damage to the HMI.

### 2.6 Safety Precaution

Please observe the following precautions when installing the unit. Failure to comply with these restrictions could result in loss of life, serious personal injury, or equipment damage.



**Warning:** Do not operate the HMI in areas subject to explosion due to flammable gases, vapors, or dusts.



**Warning:** Do not connect the HMI to an AC power source. You will cause permanent damage to the HMI.



**Warning:** Do not attempt to use a DC power supply that does not meet HMI power requirements. You may cause malfunction or permanent damage to HMI.



**Warning:** Do not power the HMI with a DC power supply used for inductive loads or for input circuitry to the programmable logic controller. Severe voltage spikes caused by these devices may damage the HMI.

#### 2.7 Installation Instruction

The HIMOS should be mounted on a panel. A sealing gasket and mounting clamps are provided with each HIMOS unit for proper installation.

#### **Environmental Considerations:**

Make sure that the unit is installed correctly and that the operating limits are followed (see Specifications for HIMOS). Do not operate the HIMOS HMI in areas subject to explosion hazards due to flammable gases, vapors or dusts. A HIMOS HMI should not be installed where fast temperature variations are present. Highly humid areas are also to be avoided. High humidity causes condensation of water in the unit.

#### **Location Considerations:**

Care should be taken when locating equipment behind the HIMOS to ensure that AC power wiring, PLC output modules, contactors, starters, relays and any other source of electrical interference are located away from the HIMOS HMI. Particular care should be taken to locate variable speed drives and switching power supplies away from the HIMOS HMI.

#### **Panel Mounting**

Follow the procedure given below for proper mounting:

1) Make a cutout of the required size. Panel cutout tolerance is  $\pm$  0.1mm.

2) Put the gasket behind the bezel (see dimensional sketch for details). The gasket may be sealed to the case using an adhesive.

4) Put the HIMOS unit through the panel cutout.

5) Insert the clamps into the case.

6) Pullback the clamps until they seat into the retaining slots.

7) Tighten the clamping screws in an even pattern until the HIMOS unit is secured into the panel.

This section presents the dimensional sketches and panel cutouts for HIMOS HMI products. (All dimensions are in mm and drawing are not to scale.)

## Hardware

## 2.7.1 Panel Cutout for HIMOS Models

## HI570 / HI575

Panel cutout: 184.00 mm x 126.00 mm





#### HI1200 / HI1202

Panel Cutout: 295 mm X 227 mm



#### HI125 / HI126

Panel cutout: 45.00 mm X 45.00 mm



## Hardware

## HI300 / HI301 / HI302 / HI303

Panel cutout: 163.00 mm X 77.00 mm





## HI410 / HI411 / HI412

Panel cutout: 132 mm x 69 mm



### 2.8 Wiring Diagram

If wiring is to be exposed to lightening or surges, use appropriate surge suppression devices. Keep AC, high energy and rapidly switching DC wiring separate from signal wires.

Connecting high voltages or AC power mains to the DC input will make unit unusable and may create an electrical shock hazard to personnel. Such a failure or shock could result in serious personal injury, loss of life and/or equipment damage. DC voltage sources should provide proper isolation from main AC power and similar hazards.

Pin description of the power connector for all HIMOS models is as follows:



#### 2.9 Communication Ports

HIMOS communication ports support four types of serial communication.

They have two Multisignal communication Ports. Multi-Signal means that each port has RS232, RS422, RS485 and CMOS signal levels.

A HIMOS HMI can simultaneously communicate on both serial ports. The HMI can be programmed from a PC on either port. Both ports can also be used with a serial printer.

Different cables are required to connect the HMI to a specific PLC. Cable details for any particular device are given in the Operation Manual for that device. The pin description of the communication ports for HIMOS model is as given below:





Pin	Name	Signal Level	Description
1.	TX+	RS422 / RS485	Differential Transmit +, also referred as TXA
2.	TXD	RS232	Transmit
3.	RXD	RS232 / CMOS	Receive
4.	RX+	RS422 / RS485	Differential Receive +, also referred as RXA
5.	GND	-	Signal Ground common to all signals
6.	+5VDC	-	DO NOT USE
7.	TXD	CMOS	Transmit
8.	TX-	RS422 / RS485	Differential Transmit -, also referred as TXB
9.	RX-	RS422 / RS485	Differential Receive -, also referred as RXB

HI125 / HI126 has two RJ45 type communication ports. Details for ports are as given below:



## **BEFORE YOU BEGIN**

In this chapter. . . .

- Connecting the HMI to a Computer
- Starting HIMOSOFT Software
- Setting Network Configuration

## 3.1 Connecting the HMI to your Computer

Before you start your first project, the HMI should be connected to the computer so that the project can be downloaded after creating it. You should also connect the PLC that you are using to the HMI so that you can test the operation of the HMI after you have finished creating the sample project.

#### • To connect your HMI to the computer

- 1. Connect a +24VDC power supply to the HMI.
- 2. Connect the programming cable to the computer and HMI.
  - Connect IBM cable to the communication port of HIMOS.
  - Download Firmware i.e. driver for the PLC. The HIMOS unit cannot communicate with PLC till the required driver is downloaded.
- 3. Apply power to the HMI.

#### To connect your PLC to HMI

A HIMOS HMI can communicate with any PLC without any change in the HIMOS hardware. To communicate with a PLC, the HIMOS unit needs:

1. Proper Communication Driver for the PLC

Each PLC has a defined protocol for communicating with any device. The communication driver is down loaded into the HIMOS unit along with the firmware. The communications driver varies from PLC to PLC. This driver enables the unit to talk to a specific PLC.

2. HIMOS - PLC communication cable A proper HIMOS - PLC cable is required for error free communication with any PLC.

## 3.2 Starting HIMOSOFT Software

### 3.2.1 Installing HIMOSOFT

System requirements for installing HIMOSOFT on your PC:

:	Microsoft® Windows 2000 or higher
:	266 MHz Pentium® II or higher Pentium-compatible CPU
:	150 MB free memory space
:	Microsoft® mouse or compatible pointing device
:	At least 64 megabytes (MB) of RAM; more memory generally improves
	responsiveness
:	800 X 600 with 24 bit true color
:	One Serial Port for Downloading Required
	:

To install HIMOSOFT:

- 1. Open Microsoft® Windows.
- 2. Select Run and Pop up window appears. Type the path for installing the Setup. This will install HIMOSOFT Setup Software.
- 3. When you click on OK, Welcome window appears on the screen. Click on Next.



4. Enter user name and company name.

Please enter your information. Please enter your name, the name of the company for which you work and the product serial number. User User Company Name: Company Serial Number: D0001 IShield	ustomer Information			Sec. 7
Please enter your name, the name of the company for which you work and the product serial number. User User Company Name: Company Serial Number: 0001	Please enter your information.			
User Name: User Company Name: Company Serial Number: 0001 IShield	Please enter your name, the name serial number.	of the company for whic	h you work and the	product
User Name: User Company Name: Company Serial Number: 0001 IShield				
User Company Name: Company Serial Number: 0001	User Name:			
Company Name: Company Serial Number: 0001 IShield	User			
Company Serial Number: 0001 IShield	Company Name:			
Serial Number: 0001 IShield	Company			
0001 IShield	Serial Number:			
liShield				
liShield	10001			
ionielo -				
	IPL LL			

5. Select the destination folder where Setup will install the files.

HIMOSOFT Setup	×
Choose Destination Location Select folder where Setup will install files.	Choose Folder
Setup will install HIMOSOFT 3.12 in the following folder. To install to this folder, click Next. To install to a different folder, click Browse and select another folder.	Please choose the installation folder. Path: C:\Archivos de programa\HIMOSOFT 3.12 Directories: HIMOSOFT 3.12 Config Config Directories HIMOSOFT 3.12 Pice Config Directories Pice Config Pice Config Pi
Destination Folder         C:\Archivos de programa\HIMOSOFT 3.12         InstallShield         < Back	Aceptar Cancelar

- 7. Installation starts. A dialog box indicating the status of progress of installation will display.
- A screen is displayed to inform you when installation is completed.

This procedure installs HIMOSOFT in Start Menu (in selected folder).

### 3.2.2 Steps for starting HIMOSOFT Software

- 1. In Windows click the Start button.
- 2. Select Programs.
- 3. Select HIMOSOFT 3.12.
- 4. Select HIMOSOFT 3.12.
- 4. Select New Application either from Tool station or from File Menu.
- 5. Select the model and product type that you would like to set by clicking on picture of the product in the list.
- 7. Define the Unit Settings and Network Configuration.
- 8. Next step is to define Tag Database and then define the screens according to your application.

#### 3.2.3 Uninstalling HIMOSOFT Software

- 1. In Windows click the Start button.
- 2. Select Programs.
- 3. Select HIMOSOFT 3.12.
- 4. Select Uninstall HIMOSOFT 3.12.

Following screen will display. The screen will ask you for the confirmation for uninstalling HIMOSOFT 3.12.

HIMOSO	FT Configuration Software
1	This will remove HIMOSOFT Configuration Software from your computer. Do you wish to proceed?

7. When you click Yes button, it will uninstall HIMOS configuration from your computer.

If you want to install HIMOSOFT again you have to follow the steps explained in section 3.2.1.

#### 3.3 Setting Network Configuration

Unit can communicate with any PLC without any changes in the hardware. To communicate with PLC unit needs proper communication driver. Each PLC has a defined protocol for communicating with any device. PLC driver is downloaded into unit alongwith the firmware. This driver enables the unit to talk to a specific PLC.

Using this configuration screen you can set the node address (0 to 255), node name for each port. You can change default values generated by editing these two fields. Protocol selection box displays list of all supported PLCs. By clicking this selection box you can see list of Model Numbers in PLC Model selection Box. Select PLC Name from Protocol drop down list and PLC Model name from Model drop down list.

PLC specific data button is activated only if selected PLC has Special PLC specific data to be set.

Unit can be configured in following ways:

- 1. For IBM Communication
- 2. For Serial Printing
- 3. For PLC Communication

Either of the ports can be configured for the ways mentioned above. Depending on the type of communication, the user may be required to define certain parameters.

## Before You Begin

The following screen displays the number of nodes connected on COM1, COM2 and COM3 with their node addresses, node name, node type (unit/PLC) and total number of blocks used in application.

Network Co	onfiguratio	n		
Node addre	nss n2 Etherne	Name	HIMOS / PLC	Blocks
000 000 001		Operator Panel Com1 : Node1	HI575 (Horizontal ) Modbus (Unit as Master ) (MODBUS )	00030 00001
Port Protocol Model	Com1 Modbus ( Un MODBUS	Port settings  it as Master )		Add
Address	02 [	0 to 255 ]	Ethemet PLC	Delete
Name	Com1 : Node	e2 (Max 15)	PLC Port ( D to 65535 )	Change
Inter frame delay	10	( 0 to 3000 ) ms		
Response time out	800	(10 to 6000 ) ms	LC specific settings	
Retry count	3	(0 to 5)		<u>Close</u> <u>H</u> elp

Unit Address	
Unit address	
Address (Com1) 00	(0 to 255)
Address (Com2) 00	(0 to 255)
Address ( Com3 )	(0. to 255)
OK	Cancel

**Note:** The HMI default unit address is 0 for COM1, COM2. If the default address of a PLC connected to COM1, COM2 is 0 then the HMI unit address must be changed to a nonzero number.

#### **1. For IBM Communication**

Node address Com1 Com2	Ethernet Name	HIMOS / PLC	Block
. 000 00	Operator Panel	HI575 ( Horizontal )	00030
-			
Port Com	1 Port settings	-	
Port Com Protocol IBM Model	1 Port settings	-	Add
Port Com Protocol IBM Model Address	Port settings	Ethemet PLC	<u>A</u> dd
Port Com Protocol IBM Model Address Name	Port settings     Communication     [0 - 255]     [Max 15]	Ethemet PLC IP Address PLC Port (0 to 65535 )	<u>A</u> dd Delete
Port Com Protocol IBM Model Address Address Name Inter frame delay	1 Port settings Communication [0 - 255] [0 - 255] [Max 15] [0 to 3000] ms	Ethemet PLC IP Address PLC Port (0 to 65535 )	<u>A</u> dd Delete Change
Port Com Protocol IBM Model Address Address Address Inter frame Address Response Imme out	1 ▼ Port settings Communication [0 - 255] (Max 15 (0 to 3000 ) ms (10 to 6000 ) ms	Ethemet PLC IP Address PLC Port (D to 65535) PLC specific settings	<u>A</u> dd <u>D</u> elete <u>D</u> hange

These are the default communication settings. If user wants IBM Communication, no other setting is required. In this case both communication ports can be used for downloading or uploading purpose.

#### 2. For Serial Printing

Node address Com1 Com2	Ethernet Name	HIMOS / PLC	Block
00 000 -	Operator Panel	HI575 ( Horizontal )	00030
Port Com Protocol Certa	1 _ Port settings		
1			
Model	·	]	Add
Model Node Address	[0-255]	Ethemet PLC	Add
Model Node Address Name	[0 - 255] [Max 15]	Ethernet PLC IP Address PLC Port (0 to 65535)	Add Delete
Model Node Address Name Inter frame	( 0 to 3000 ) ms	Ethernet PLC IP Address PLC Port (D to 65535 )	<u>A</u> dd <u>D</u> elete <u>D</u> hange
Model Node Address Name Inter frame delay Response Itime out	(0 - 255 ) (Max 15 ) (0 to 3000 ) ms (10 to 6000 ) ms	Ethemet PLC IP Address PLC Port (D to 65535)	<u>A</u> dd Delete Dhange

The user can use either of the ports for serial printing. This is done by selecting Protocol as "Serial Printer". In the above example, the user has configured COM1 for serial printing. However, when this port is not being used for printing, it can be used for IBM communication.

The user can change the serial printing parameters by selecting the "Comm Settings" option.

Serial Printer Set	tings 🛛 🔀
<ul> <li>Printer port setup</li> </ul>	
<u>B</u> aud Rate	9600 💌
<u>P</u> arity	None
N <u>u</u> mber of Bits	8 💌
Number of column <u>s</u>	80 [01 - 80]
Terminating characte	r None 💌
Number of characters to print	1590 1 to 1590
	Ok Cancel

The following parameters can be modified for serial printing:

Baud Rate: supported baud rates are 4800, 9600, 19.2K, 38.4K, 57.6K and 115.2K. Parity: Parity can be None, Even or Odd.

Number of bits: Number of bits can be 7 or 8.

Number of Columns: Number of columns can be minimum 1 to maximum 255.

Terminating Character: Can be None, CR (Carriage Return), LF (Line Feed) or CR+LF. Number of characters to print: Can be from minimum 1 to maximum 256.

Click Ok to set printer setting.

#### 3. For PLC Communication

Network Co	onfiguratio	n		
Node addre Com1 Cor 000 000 001	m2 Etherne	t Name Operator Panel Com1 : Node1	HIMOS / PLC HI575 (Horizontal ) Aromat FP Series (FP0)	Blocks 00030 00000
Port	Cont	- Bast astrings		
Protocol	Aromat FP S			
Model Node	FP0	•		(Add)
Address	02 [	0 to 255 ]	- Ethemet PLC	Delete
Name	Com1 : Node	e2 (Max 15)	PLC Port ( 0 to 65535 )	Change
Inter frame delay	10	( 0 to 3000 ) ms		
Response time out	800	( 10 to 6000 ) ms	PLC specific settings	
Retry count	3	(0 to 5)		<u>Close</u> <u>H</u> elp

#### 1. Protocol

- User can select desired PLC from the list of available drivers. In the example shown above, user has selected Aromat FP Series at COM1.

#### 2. Port Settings

-User can set PLC communication parameters like Baud Rate, Parity, Data Bits and Stop Bits.

Click Ok to set the parameters.

<u>B</u> a	aud Rate	9600	•
₽	arity	Ddd	•
D	ata Bits	8	•
<u>S</u> t	op Bits	1	•

## Before You Begin

The PLC Communication parameters are:

- i. **Baud Rate**: Baud Rate is the measure of number of times per second a signal in a communication channel changes state. For HIMOS units, Baud rate are 4800, 9600, 19.2K, 38.4K, 57.6K, 115.2K, 187.5K.
- ii. **Parity:** Parity bit is included to check that data has been transmitted accurately. For HIMOS units, Parity bits are None, Odd and Even.
- iii. Data Bits: Data bits are number of bits used to represent one character of data. For HIMOS units, Data bits are either 7 or 8.
- iv. **Stop Bits**: Stop bits are inserted into the data frame to inform the receiving end that the transmission of byte of data is complete. For HIMOS units, Stop bits are either 1 or 2.
- **3. Model:** Select the desired PLC model from the drop down list. In the example shown above, the user selected the "FP0" model.
- 4. Address: Enter a unique PLC node address (0 to 32)
- 5. Name: Specify a name for the node name up to 15 characters in length.

#### 6. Inter Frame Delay:

Inter Frame Delay is the delay between the response received of last query and the next query that is to be transmitted.

#### 7. Response timeout:

Response time out is the maximum time in which slave should respond to a master query. If slave does not respond to a master query within this time, the master will declare that the slave has been timed out.

- **8. Retry Count:** Retrycount is the number of retry queries master will send to slave, if slave is timed out. When all re tries are finished, the master will declare a communication break and will show "!!!!".
- 9. Add Node: This will add the node to the network.

#### 10. Change Node:

The user can change PLC or PLC related information. This is done by highlighting the node, changing the information and finally clicking the button 'Change a Node'.

#### 11. PLC specific settings:

This screen is used to configure PLC Specific information. This field is applicable for the following protocols only.

- 1. Modbus Master
- 2. Aromat series PLCs.

For this protocol Frame delay can be set using the screen as shown below.

I.	[00-00]

## **USING HIMOSOFT**

In this chapter. . . .

- HIMOS Menu Structure
- Creating New Application
- Creating Screens
- Data Entry Object
- Display HIMOS Or PLC Data Object
- Global And Power On Tasks
- Global Keys
- Screen Keys

### 4.1 HIMOS Menu Structure

From Windows Task Bar, click the **Start** button, point to HIMOSOFT 3.12, and then click the HIMOSOFT 3.12 program. The following window will appear.



The program displays a splash screen at start-up. This dialog can be closed by pressing any key, a mouse click, or waiting 10 seconds for it to automatically go to the next screen (i.e. Toolstation).



# Using HIMOSOFT

The menu bar operates like any standard Windows Menu bar. To open a particular Menu, click it with the mouse or use key along with the **ALT** key. When no application is opened, the menu bar shown above will be displayed.



The Tool-Station consists of icons. When the mouse cursor rests over any icon, a tool-tip is displayed. Click on the icon to select the particular menu.

Now we will study the different Menus in the Menu Bar.

#### 4.1.1 File Menu

The file menu handles file related functions including New Application, Close Application, Save Application, Print and Exit HIMOS. Selecting the Information option allows the user to set or change HIMOS application information such as application title, user name etc.

File	Define	Communicate	ι
N	ew		1
0	pen		-
Close		Ctrl+F4	
Save		F2	
S	ave as		
Ir	formatio	n	
In	nport		
E:	xport		
Pi	rint		
Exit		Alt+F4	

# Using HIMOSOFT

<u>N</u> ew	-	Creates a new application.
<u>O</u> pen	-	Opens a saved application.
Clos <u>e</u>	-	Closes currently opened application.
<u>S</u> ave	-	Saves currently opened application.
Save <u>a</u> s	-	Saves the current application with a different name.
<u>Information</u>	-	Configures application specific information such as application title, author, password etc.
Prin <u>t</u>	-	Prints current application information such as Project information, Unit settings, HIMOS nodes, tags, screens, application tasklist, screen tasklist, alarms either by selecting 'All' or selecting specific attributes.
Import	-	Imports all the text data associated with the wizards (on/off text, labels etc.).
Export	-	Exports the data from HIMOS projects and put it into a user specified file.
E <u>x</u> it	-	Exits HIMOSOFT.

#### 4.1.2 Define Menu

This menu defines the application. In the main window of HIMOSOFT, bottom line of the icons is dedicated for this menu.

ile	Define Communicate U	Itilities Help				
11	Unit Settings					
	Network Configuration					
	Tag database					
	Screens	F6				
	Global Keys	F7				
	Alarms					
	Application Tasklists					
	Ladder Logic Block	F10				
	High speed interrupt	F11				
	High speed Timer					
	Data Logger					
	Configure PID Block					
	16-Point Linearization					
	Time Proportional PWM Configuration					
	Pulse Output					
	Analog Configuration					
	Analog Totalizer					
	Printing configuration					
	Hide Project Tools		F12			

# Using HIMOSOFT

Unit Settings	-	Shows the unit's settings. Normally there is no need to change these settings.
$\underline{\mathbf{N}} etwork \ Configuration$	-	Defines PLC node, node ID etc.
<u>T</u> ag Database	-	Defines tags to be used in the application.
<u>S</u> creens	-	Defines screens.
Global <u>K</u> eys	-	Defines global keys.
<u>A</u> larms	-	Defines alarms in the application.
Appli <b>c</b> ation Task-List	-	Defines Power-on and Global Tasklist.
Ladder Logic Block	-	Used for development of ladder block.
High Speed Interrupt	-	Used for applications like Rate Measurement, Totalizer.
High Speed Timer	-	Allows ladder program to be executed in parallel to main program.
Data Logger	-	Used to record the information about the surrounding environment.
Configure PID Block	-	Used as feedback controller in process and control applications.
16-Point Linearization	-	Used to linearize a nonlinear variable.
PWM Configuration	-	Used to encode analog output to digital signals.
Pulse Output	-	Used for motion control applications.
Analog Configuration	-	Used for selection of analog input and output channels.
Analog Totalizer fluid.	-	Used mostly with Flow transmitters which gives analog value proportional to flow of
Hide Project Tools	-	When enabled project toolbar is disabled. By default, project toolbar is enabled.

#### 4.1.3 Communicate Menu

Communicate Menu has options for selecting COM port, downloading / uploading HIMOS application etc.

File	Define	Communicate	Utilities Help
		Communica	tion Port
		Download	8
		Upload	
		Ethernet Se	ettings
		Communica	tion Mode

Communication Port	-	Sets COM port for communicating with HIMOS.
<u>D</u> ownload	-	Downloads Application to HIMOS Unit.
<u>U</u> pload	-	Uploads Application from HIMOS Unit.
Ethernet Settings	-	Applicable to only HI576 / HI1202. Used to set the Ethernet port.
Communication Mode	-	Applicable to only HI576 / HI1202. Used to set the Communication mode.
#### 4.1.4 **Utilities Menu**

Utilities Menu informs the user about the memory used for the application. This menu has other options like Font Editor, image conversion, clear picture library and load default fonts.

Utilities	Screen	Objects	Tools		
Off Li	ne Simula	tion			
On Lir	ne Ladder	Monitor			
On Lir	ne Screen	Monitor			
Memo	ory Status	i			
Font	Editor				
Display Logged Data					
Image	e Convers	sion to bmp	o		
Clear	Picture Li	brary			
Conv	ert Applic	ation			

Off Line Simulation	-	Allows to simulate an aplication without a HIMOS unit.
On Line <u>L</u> adder Monitor	-	Displays statistics of the memory used by the current application.
On Line Screen Monitor	-	Displays statistics of the memory used by the current application.
Display Logged Data	-	Displays the logged data in the HIMOS memory.
Font Editor	-	User can edit the fonts by the Font Editor utility.
Image Conversion to bitmap	-	Converts images from any type of picture format to bitmaps.
HIMOS Memory status	-	Displays statistics of the memory used by the current application.
Clear Picture Library	-	User can clear the picture library. Close the applications before clearing Picture library.
Convert Application	-	Allows to convert the application of one product to the other product.

#### 4.1.5 Help Menu

The Help menu offers help programming assistance and information about the HIMOS version.

📅 HIMOSOFT - [untitled]						
File	Define	Communicate	Utilities	Help		
				Index F1		
				About HIMOS	50FT	

Index

Lists all of the Help topics

About HIMOSOFT

- Displays the software version number and date.

# 4.2 Creating New Application

A User can create a new application either from Menu Bar or from Tool Bar.

 Creating a New Application from Menu Bar: To create a New Application either choose File | New menu option or click on New Application icon from Toolbar.



The following screen will appear.



This screen shows a list of all HIMOS units. Select the product to be programmed by clicking on the picture of the product in the list. An enlarged picture of the product is also shown below the list.

On clicking Ok button product type selection screen is displayed -

ect Mode	1			
Model List				
HI300-16	12-0000-B-*-00			
HI301-16	12-0000-B-R*-0	0 10		
HI303-16	12-0402-U-B-R	-00		
Чт.				
	HI302	Digital	Analog	
	Inputs	16	04	
	Outputs	12	02	
1/0 Type-				
Digit	al Outputs : 12	2 NPN or PN	P Transistor outpu	its
Anal	og Inputs : mi	V, mA, Therr	nocouple, RTD	
Anal	og Outputs : m	A		
Note				
*: C for	NPN, P for PNF	•		
Display Or	ientation ———			
	C Horizon	tal (192 x 6	4 Pixels )	
	C Vertical	(64×19	2 Pixels 1	
	ter i entre en			

After selecting desired product, select the desired model. For more details about models, refer Chapter 1. Select the type of model and click OK button to start the application.

#### Steps for creating a new application are as follows:

- 1) Start a new project using either File Menu or Tool section New command.
- 2) Define unit's settings.
- 3) Define Network Configuration for selected unit and PLCs.
- 4) Define tags required for the application in the Tag Database.
- 5) Define the screens.
- 6) Define Power-on, Global and Screen tasks.
- 7) Save your application.
- 8) Download firmware to the unit.
- 9) Download your application into the unit.

#### Tag Database

This is the central database for the tags that need to be used in the application. Once the tags are defined (as register or coils) and their attributes selected, the tags can be used in the application on screens, tasks, alarms etc. This screen helps you to define Tags associated with defined Nodes. A tag is a register, coil or an individual bit of a register. Select the type of tag from the Tag Type field.

If the type of tag selected is a register then the number of bytes required can also be selected. For displaying or editing a floating point data number, the number of bytes must be 4. The Tag Name field is user definable. A tag is not added to the tag list unless a tag name is defined. Once these fields are defined, click on the Add button. The Block field in the tag database defines the starting address of the tag block followed by the block size.

For example : Tag M0214 is within a block (M0214 : 1) whose starting address is M0214 and block size is 1.

This block size is optimized automatically depending on the address of PLC Tag.

Default block size is either 1 or 16. This setting varies from PLC to PLC.

The attributes of existing tag can be changed by highlighting the tag, making the changes, and clicking the Change Tag button. An existing tag can be removed from tag list by clicking on Delete Tag button. Note that removal of tags is possible only if they are not used in any screen.

Tags							
No	Port Node	Block	Tag	Byte(s)	Tag-Name		Close
00001 00002 00003 00004 00005 00005 00006 00007 00008 00009 00009 00010 00011	00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000	S0001 : 001 S0003 : 001 S0003 : 001 S0005 : 001 S0010 : 001 S0011 : 001 S0012 : 001 S0013 : 001 S0014 : 001 S0015 : 001 S0016 : 001 S0016 : 001	\$0001 \$0003_14 \$0003_15 \$0005 \$0010 \$0011 \$0012 \$0013 \$0014 \$0015 \$0016 \$0017	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	Language Comm1 status Comm2 status Screen trigger re RTC Date RTC Month RTC Year RTC Hour RTC Hour RTC Minutes RTC Seconds RTC day of weat	egister	
Node	[ 000 : Oper	ator Panel ] HIMOS-un	it		•		
			System Coil		•	Read - Write	Add
Tag-Type	C Registe	Coil or Bit-addr	essed Register				
	Size : 1 b	it [0000 - 009	99] — (=)				Change
Coil	\$0000	0000	•				
Tag- <u>N</u> ame						Max 40 chars	Cancel
<u>Byte(s)</u>							

Add - Use this button to add a tag. Before clicking this button, the user has to define the following:

- 1. Node : Where the tag is located.
- 2. Register, coil or a bit within a register. Registers can be read only or read/write. The address limits are shown and vary from PLC model to model.
- 4. Tag name : Each tag needs to have a unique name. The name can be up to 40 characters in length.
- 5. Byte(s): If the selected tag is a register, the tag can be defined as a 1 byte ( either high or low byte), a 2 byte, or a 4 byte tag.

**Change** – Select the tag. Change the information and then click on the Change button.

**Delete** - Select the tag and click on Delete button to delete the tag. Before deleting any tag, the user must delete any references to the tag in screens and tasks. Otherwise it can not be deleted.

#### **Default System Tags**

Note: Please do not attempt to modify read only system tags in the ladder. This could affect the functionality of the product.

1. System Registers

Register	Tag Name	Read/Write	Description	
S0001	Language	Read/Write	Writing the value will change languages used in any wizard	
S0003_13	COM3 Status	Read Only	0=Communication error 1=Communicating with PLC	
S0003_14	COM1 Status	Read Only	0=Communication error 1=Communicating with PLC	
S0003_15	COM2 Status	Read Only	0=Communication error 1=Communicating with PLC	
S0003_00	Logger memory full status	Read Only	1=Memory Full	
S0003_01	Logger memory clear status	Read Only	1=Memory Clear routine being executed	
S0003_02	RTC Fail	Read Only	RTC Fail	
S0004	Number of historical alarms	Read Only	Shows no of alarms stored in history	
S0005	Screen trigger register	Read/Write	Shows active screen nº. User can change screen by writing any valid screen nº in this register	
S0006	Screen Saver Time	Read/Write	User can change screen saver time at run time	
S0007	Battery voltage	Read Only	Indicates Battery voltage in #.# format	
S0008	Error code for Xtradrive COM1	Read Only	Error code for Xtradrive port1	
S0009	Error code for Xtradrive COM2	Read Only	Error code for Xtradrive port2	
S0010	RTC Day	Read Only	RTC Day in Integer format	
S0011	RTC Month	Read Only	RTC Month in Integer format	
S0012	RTC Year	Read Only	RTC Year in Integer format	
S0013	RTC Hour	Read Only	RTC Hour in Integer format	
S0014	RTC Minute	Read Only	RTC Minute in Integer format	
S0015	RTC Second	Read Only	RTC Second in Integer format	
S0016	RTC Day of Week	Read Only	RTC Day of Week in Integer format	
S0017	ScanTime Register	Read Only	Shows time required to execute Screen, Screen Task and Global task in millisecond. Use ####.# format for display	
S0018	Communication recover time(s) for Port 1	Read/Write	Shows time in sec recover communication with failed nodes for port1. The default value is 60 sec.	
S0019	Communication recover time(s) for Port 2	Read/Write	Shows time in sec recover communication with failed nodes for port2. The default value is 60 sec.	
S0020	Driver scan time(ms) for Port1	Read Only	Shows time required to execute Screen blocks for port1 in millisec- onds. Use ####.# format for display	
S0021	Driver scan time(ms) for Port2	Read Only	Shows time required to execute Screen blocks for port2 in millisec- onds. Use ####.# format for display	
S0022	Communication recover time(s) for Port 3	Read/Write	Shows time in sec recover communication with failed nodes for port3. The default value is 60 sec.	
S0023	PopUp Screen trigger register	Read/Write	Value stored in this register triggers the popup stored on s0020 bit	

Note: S0024 - S0063 are reserved for future use.

# System Coils:

Coil	Tag Name	Read/Write	Description
s0000	Carry Bit	Read Only	Used to store the carry generated during bit wise operation.
s0001	High speed timer control bit	Read/Write	Enable High Speed Timer through Ladder
s0003	Minute change pulse	Read Only	1 for every change in minute for one scan cycle
s0004	Hour change pulse	Read Only	1 for every change in hour for one scan cycle
s0005	Date change pulse	Read Only	1 for every change in date for one scan cycle
s0006	Month change pulse	Read Only	1 for every change in date for one scan cycle
s0007	Year change pulse	Read Only	1 for every change in year for one scan cycle
s0008	Screen saver control	Read/Write	0:Disable Screen Saver 1:Enable Screen Saver. You can change this bit in RunTime
s0009	Beeper On/Off	Read/Write	0:Enable Beeper 1:Disable Beeper. You can change this bit in RunTime
s0010	Battery Status	Read Only	0:Battery Voltage is OK (i.e. above 2.2V) 1:Low Battery (i.e. below 2.2V)
s0011	Start/Stop jog for Xtradrive com1	Read/Write	Used in jog operation of xtradrive in port1 1:Continuous jog operation on port1 0:Stop jog on port1
s0012	Update Historical trend	Read/Write	Update historical trend window when set to 1
s0013	Start/Stop jog for Xtradrive com2	Read/Write	Used in jog operation of xtradrive in port2 1:Continuous jog operation on port2 0:Stop jog on port2
s0014	Ackowledege all alarms	Read Only	0:All alarms are acknowledged 1:All alarms are not acknowledged in the real and historical alarms
s0016	Valid key beeper On/Off	Read/Write	1:Enable valid Beeper 0:Disable valid Beeper. You can change this bit in RunTime
s0017	Invalid key beeper On/Off	Read/Write	1:Enable invalid Beeper 0:Disable invalid Beeper. You can change this bit in RunTime
s0019	Invalid date entry	Read Only	0:Valid date 1:Invalid date
s0020	PopUp screen control coil	Read/Write	This bit triggers the popup screen number stored in S0023
s0021	Communication recover enable bit for port1	Read/Write	If this bit is set, communication with the failed nodes is detected after scan time S0018 for port1. By default: ON
s0022	Communication recover enable bit for port2	Read/Write	If this bit is set, communication with the failed nodes is detected after scan time S0019 for port2. By default: ON
s0023	Communication recover enable bit for port3	Read/Write	If this bit is set, communication with the failed nodes is detected after scan time S0022 for port3. By default: ON

Note: s0024 - s0099 are reserved for future use.

# Using HIMOSOFT

# **Unit Memory Configuration:**

Data Type	Size	Register/Coil	Length	Туре	Description
Data Register	D0000 - D0999	Register	1,2,4 Bytes	Read/Write	General Purpose register
Retentive Register	R0000 - R1399	Register	1,2,4 Bytes	Read/Write	Nonvolatile registers for storage
System Register	S0000 - S0063	Register	1,2,4 Bytes	Varies*	Status and control registers for unit
System Coil	s0000 - s0099	Coil	1 Bit	Varies*	Status and control coil for unit
Internal Coil	B0000 - B4999	Coil	1 Bit	Read/Write	General purpose internal coils
Input Coil	X0000 - X0099	Coil	1 Bit	Read Only	Physical input coils
Output Coil	Y0000 - Y0099	Coil	1 Bit	Read/Write	Physical output coils
Internal Register	J0000 - J0312	Register	2 Bytes	Read/Write	Each internal register is mapped with internal coil (B0000 - B0015)
Input Register	U0000 - U0006	Register	2 Bytes	Read Only	Each input register is mapped with input coil (X0000 - X0015)
Output Register	L0000 - L0006	Register	2 Bytes	Read/Write	Each output register is mapped with output coil (Y0000 - Y0015)
Timer Register	T0000 - T0127	Register	2 Bytes	Read/Write	Timer register
Counter Register	C0000 - C0177	Register	2 Bytes	Read/Write	Counter registers. Counters 0-127 are Non-Retentive registers, and counters 128-177 are Battery Backed Retentive Registers

\* See System tables.

# 4.3 Creating Screens

:

÷

Screens are the most important part of any application as it displays the information required by the operator. HIMOS has various objects to make a screen operator-friendly. Click on the Screens icon to define screens.

#### In the Screens dialog box, enter the screen number, name and password. Select screen properties and screen type.

Screen	Number
Screen	Name
Passwo	ord

Screen number can be from 1 to 65000. The screen number is unique. Screen name can be up to 20 characters. It is displayed only in software configuration. User can protect screen information by giving password to the screen. User can assign any number from 1 to 9999 as screen password.

# S

# Using HIMOSOFT

Screen Number	1 [1-	65534]	Screen Properties	
Screen Na <u>m</u> e	Screen1		Display only	•
Password	[1.	9999 ]	[	
		<u>D</u> escription		
			1	
	(11 - 1)		Available Screens	
Associated Scre	ens iMavii			
A <u>s</u> sociated Scre	ens (Max:I)	<- Associate		

#### Screen Properties - Screen properties are following:

1. **Display only :** If the screen property is 'Display only' then the screen information is displayed on LCD.

2. **Print Only :** Screen, having this property, will not be displayed. Alphanumeric data on the screen goes to serial printer only once and control jumps back to last displayed screen. If user wants to print the data, he has to define the port as 'Serial Printer' port. Either of the ports can be configured for printing. When the print screen is activated, the print data will be sent from the printer port.

3. **Print Once / display :** If the property of the screen is Print Once / display, first all the Alphanumeric data on the screen goes to serial printer and then the screen is displayed on LCD. If user wants to print the data , he has to define the port as 'Serial Printer' port. Either of the ports can be configured for printing. When the print screen is activated, the print data will be sent from the printer port.

**4. Description :** The user can include information about the screen for his reference. This description is only for software configuration and it is not displayed on unit.

**5. Associated Screens**: An associated screen is useful where one or more objects are common to different screen. The common data is placed in a screen. This screen is associated to other screens.

Advantages of using associated screens -

- 1. It saves application memory.
- 2. It saves time of the application programmer.
- Notes: 1. Only one screen can be associated to another screen.
  - 2. No data entry objects can be placed in the screen to be associated.
    - 3. Executing a PLC task is not supported in the associated screen.

User can 'unassociate' a screen.

Available Screens - List of available screens is displayed.

Click 'Ok' button to edit screen.

# 4.3.1 Protecting HIMOS Application

For the purpose of security, HIMOS application can be password protected. To make application password protected, define password in application information screen as shown below. Select the **File | Information** menu option and following screen will appear.

<u>I</u> itle	
Author	
Password *** (Max 8 char)	
Date last edited : 20/1172006	
Time last edited : 11:40:17	
	~
	$\sim$

Define password for application and download or save the application. Following screen will appear either during uploading an application or during opening an application.

Password	
Password :	×××
ОК	Cancel

# 4.3.2 Protecting HIMOS Screen

User can also protect a screen by providing screen password in the screen information screen. When user selects a new screen, screen password can be entered in the Password field as shown below.

# Using HIMOSOFT

Screen <u>N</u> umber	1	[1-6500	00]	Screen Pro	operties	152
Screen Na <u>m</u> e	Screen1			Display	only	
<u>P</u> assword	1236	[ 1 - 9999	9]	-		
Screen Background			<u>D</u> escription	1		
Screen Type	Base scre	een 💌	Screen Param	neters		
Associated Scree	ens (M	(ax:1)		Available S	creens	
			<- Associate			
				12		

When user downloads an application and when he opens the screen with password, software will first ask for the password. For Touchscreen products, user can enter the password with the help of numeric keypad.

For Keypad based products user can enter the password with the help of Default local keys or function keys. The tasks on these Default keys are defined in the Screen task list. Hence the Defualt keys tasks get executed only when the password screen appears. Following table shows the Default local keys for the keypad based HIMOS products.

Tasks Products	Shift Value to left	Increase digit by 1	Accept Password	Clear Password
HI12X	-	-	ENT	F2
HI30X	-	-	ENT	F2

# 4.4 Data Entry Object

Any register or coil from the unit or PLC memory, except Read-only registers and coils, can be edited using the numeric keypad.

Procedure -

1. Click on the Data Entry button from objects toolbar.

2. The mouse pointer will change to the tool shape. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and click the left mouse button. The data entry dialog box will appear.

Data Entry objects are explained in detail in chapter 5.

## 4.5 Display Data Object

This object is used to display the contents of the register or coil. Procedure-

1. Click on 'Display Data' from objects toolbar. The mouse pointer will change to the tool shape.

2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and click the left mouse button. The data entry dialog box will appear.

Display data object is explained in detail in chapter 5.

#### 4.6 Global And Power On Task

1. **Power-on Tasks** - Tasks specified in this task list are executed only once when the unit is powered on.

2. Global Tasks - Tasks specified in the global task list execute continuously as long as the unit has power.

plication ( Power-on and Global ) Task-lists	
Select a Task to add	<u>C</u> lose <u>H</u> elp
C Power-on Tasks	
Goto Screen number : 00001 Write 10 to Tag S0001	* * ×
Global Tasks	
Add Tag S0001 to Tag S0001	* *

#### Select a Task to add

This drop down list allows the user to select a task to be executed. A task list may contain multiple tasks.



Functions of the buttons:



# 4.7 Global Keys

Define tasks for these key events -

Press Tasks	_	These tasks are performed only once when the key is pressed.
Pressed Tasks	_	These tasks are performed as long as the key is pressed.
Released Tasks	_	These tasks are performed when the key is released.

Tasks defined for Global Keys are executed for whole application, independent of which screen is being displayed.

Global Keys' Task-lists			
	1	Select a Task to add	<u>C</u> lose Help
	1 2 3 4 5 6	<ul> <li>'Press' Tasks</li> <li>Goto Previous Screen</li> </ul>	-
F1 F2 F3	F4 7 8 9 C ESC 0' ENT	Presse <u>d</u> ' Tasks	×
			* * ×
নি Single Key ি Tu	vo simultaneous keys	└Beleased' Tasks	*
Indicates undefined Global-Key	Extended Keypad		×
	- Accepts se	elected task.	
Up arrow 👔	- Shifts sele	cted task upwards.	
Down arrow 🛃	- Shifts sele	cted task downwards.	
Delete X	- Deleted se	elected task.	
Single Key	- If this option	on is selected, a task is defined to one key.	

If this option is selected, a task is defined to a combination of two

Two simultaneous keys

-

keys.

## 4.8 Screen Keys

Define tasks for key events for a specific screen -

Down arrow

Delete 🗙

Single Key

Press Tasks	:	These tasks are performed only once when the key is pressed.
Pressed Tasks	:	These tasks are performed as long as the key is pressed.
Released Tasks	:	These tasks are performed when the key is released.

Task defined under this option are executed only for the currently displayed screen . These are screen dependent tasks.

HIMOSOFT : Task-lists of Keys for Screen [ 1 : Scre	en1]	<b>X</b>
	Select a Task to add	
▲ 1 2 3 4 5 6 F1 F2 F3 F4 7 8 9 PREV ↔ ↔ ESC 0 <sup>+/</sup> ENT	Press' Tasks Goto Previous Screen	
	← 'Presse <u>d</u> ' Tasks	* * * *
<ul> <li>Single Key</li> <li>Two simultaneous keys</li> <li>A Key will act as Global-key if no tasks are defined for that Key, for this Screen.</li> </ul>	<u>○ 'B</u> eleased' Tasks	*
Indicates undefined Global-Key. Extended Keypad		×
Close Accepts s	selected task.	
Up arrow 💽 - Selected	task is shifted up.	

- Selected task is shifted down.
- Selected task is deleted.
- If this option is selected, a task is defined to one key.
- **Two simultaneous keys** If this option is selected, a task is defined to a combination of two keys.

Note: A Screen Keys' Tasklist takes priority over the Global Keys' Tasklist when the screen is displayed.

# **REPRESENTING DATA BY OBJECTS AND WIZARDS**

In this chapter. . . .

- ♦ Alphanumeric Objects
- Graphics Objects
- Wizards

# 5.1 Alphanumeric Objects

Alphanumeric objects are text objects with certain properties or attributes. By using various attributes, the designer can emphasize the importance of a particular text object. The alphanumeric objects in models with a graphics display have some additional attributes.



Alphanumeric Objects Types:

- 1. Text Object
- 2. Data Entry
- 3. Display Data
- 4. Time
- 5. Date

# 5.1.1 Text Object

Text object is useful for displaying any message for the operator. Plain text objects do not depend on the PLC.

#### Procedure

1. Click on the Text button in screen Objects Toolbar or Menu option. The shape of the mouse pointer will change.

2. Now place the mouse pointer at the desired location and mark the area of the text object while holding the left mouse button.

3. A block cursor will blink at the location inside the text outline. Enter the text. The last character will be overwritten if insert mode (Computer Keyboard) is disabled. If it is enabled, the new character will not be accepted.

# 5.1.2 Data Entry Object

Any read/write register or coil from the unit or PLC memory can be edited using the numeric keypad.

Data Entry		
Туре	Coil     ○ Register         Image: Coi	] <u>0</u> k
Coil- <u>T</u> ag	s0000 ( Carry bit )	<u>C</u> ancel
<u>O</u> n Text ON	Off Text	Help

Select either a Coil or Register data entry type. Coil data entry is selected by default.

1. Coil-Tag: Select Coil tag from the list.

2. On Text: Enter On text maximum up to 40 characters.

3. **Off Text**: Enter Off text maximum up to 40 characters.

4. **Popup**: To enter data with popup keypad in a touch screen unit, the designer has to select the keypad check box and the popup screen number to be used. If popup data entry is not desired, then a static numeric keypad object needs to be added to the screen .

To edit a register, select Register Data Entry.

Data Entry			×
Type	C <u>C</u> oil C <u>Begiste</u>	Popup	<u>0</u> k
Register- <u>T</u> ag	S0001 (Language)	<u></u>	ancel
<u>D</u> ata Type	Unsigned integer 👤	Eormat #####	<u>+</u> elp
<u>L</u> ow-limit	0	0 <= Low <= High	
<u>H</u> igh-limit	65535	Low <= High <= 65535	
1st-operation	NOF + - * /	[ 0 to 65535 ]	
2nd-operation	NOF + - * /	[ 0 to 65535]	

Register Data Entry dialog box is used to program the following:

- 1. **Register-Tag**: This is a list of tags available in the application. The list will not display any read only registers that can not be modified.
- 2. Data Type: This selects the type of data to be entered. Choices are Unsigned Integer, Signed Integer,
- 3. **Format**: Hexadecimal, BCD, Binary (1 word), Float and ASCII.
- 3. **Format**: Determines the format of the data to be displayed.
- 4. Low-limit: Data entered can be limited by assigning Low limit.
- 5. High-limit: Data entered can be limited by assigning High limit.
  6. 1st-operation: The designer can have a math operations performed on the data. The
- 6. **1st-operation**: The designer can have a math operations performed on the data. The default selection is NOP or no operation.
- 7. **2nd- operation**: The designer can have a math operations performed on the data. The default selection is NOP or no operation.
- 8. **Popup**: To enter data with popup keypad in a touch screen unit, the designer has to select the keypad check box and the popup screen number to use. If popup data entry is not desired, then a static numeric keypad object needs to be added to the screen .

**Note:** Math operations work only on the unsigned values and yield an unsigned result. For example, if the entry value is 25 and the first operation is to divide by 100, the result stored in the tag is zero.

Click 'Ok' button to add the object to the screen.

#### 5.1.3 **Display Data Object**

#### Procedure

1. Click on 'Display Data' from object toolbar. The mouse pointer will change to the tool shape.

2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and click the left mouse button. The data entry dialog box will appear.



#### **Type- Bit Text**

This object displays text depending on the bit status.

- 1. Coil-Tag- Select Coil tag from the list.
- 2. On Text Enter On text maximum up to 40 characters.
- 3. Off Text Enter Off text maximum up to 40 characters.

#### Type – Register Value

	Display data 🛛 🔀
	Type C <u>B</u> it Text © <u>Register Value</u> C <u>R</u> egister Text
	Register-Iag S0001 (Language )
	Data Type Format Unsigned integer ▼ ###### ▼ ✓ Leading zeros blank
	1st-operation NoF + - * / [0 to 65535]
	2nd-operation NOF + - * / [0 to 65535]
. Register-Ta	ag: This is a list of tags available in the application. The list will not display any that can not be modified.
2. Data Type:	This selects the type of data to be entered. Choices are Unsigned Integer, a Hexadecimal BCD Binary (1 word) Elect and ASCII
3. Format:	Determines the format of the data to be displayed.
Leading ze	ros blank:
	The Leading Zeros blank option determines whether zeros preceding the valu or not. If this option is enabled then register value will be displayed without

- The designer can have a math operations performed on the data. The default selection is NOP 5. 1st-operation: or no operation. 7. 2nd-operation: The designer can have a math operations performed on the data. The default selection is NOP
- or no operation.

# **Representing Data**

### Type – Register Text

This object displays different text depending on the value or range of values of a register.

Display data					×
Type C <u>B</u> it	Text C Register)	⊻alue ⊙	Register Text		Close
Register- <u>T</u> ag S(	0001 (Language)		•		
Low limit	High Limit	Text			
100	500	Cycle 1			
<u>D</u> efine new	range				Dejete
Low Limit	<u>H</u> igh Limit		Te <u>x</u> t		
1001	1500		Cycle 3	<u>_</u>	Acceb
[ 0 to 65535 ]	[ 0 to 65535	5]	1		<u>D</u> iscard

1. **Register-Tag** - This is a list of tags available in the application. The list will not display any read only registers that can not be modified.

2. **Show table** - Table shows list of text string defined for different ranges.

- 3. Define new range User can define new range with low limit, high limit and text in following edit box.
- 4. **Delete** User can delete entry from the table.
- 5. Accept Using this button edited range is accepted and added in the table.
- 6. **Discard** Using this button edited limit and text is disabled.

Click 'Close' button to add object to the screen.

### 5.1.4 Time

- 1. Click on 'Time' from objects toolbar. The mouse pointer will change to the tool shape.
- 2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and click the left mouse button.

Object is placed in default format HH:MM:SS. User can change format by double click on object.

Time and Date		×
Time		
• HH:MM:SS	○ НН: <u>М</u> М	
Date		
© <u>D</u> D/MM/YY	C MM/DD/ <u>Y</u> Y	
🗖 Day		
	<u>O</u> k <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> el	Р

# **Representing Data**

Time is displayed in 24 hour format without leading zeros. If the HIMOS hardware does not have a real time clock, this object will display a '?'

#### 5.1.5 Date

1. Click on 'Date' from objects toolbar. The mouse pointer will change to the tool shape. 2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and click the left mouse button.

Object is placed in default format DD/MM/YY without leading zeroes. User can change format by double click on object.

Time and Date	. 🛛	3
Time		]
C HH:MM:	: <u>s</u> s <b>с</b> нн: <u>м</u> м	
Date		
○ <u>D</u> D/MM ☑ Day	/YY C MM/DD/ <u>Y</u> Y	
	<u>O</u> k <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

By selecting the Day check box, the day of the week will be displayed ( 'SUN', 'MON',  $\dots$  ) If the HIMOS hardware does not have a real time clock, this object will display '?'.

#### **Attributes of Alphanumeric Objects**

#### Font Size

A text object can have four font sizes: 5x7 Dots, 7x14 Dots, 10x14 Dots and 20x28 Dots. Default font size is 5x7 Dots

#### Text Foreground:

Text foreground can be changed by user. Two options are available: black and white. Default Text Foreground is Black.

#### **Text Background**

The text background can be changed by the designer. The options are black and white. The default text background is white.

#### Border - Single or Double

Any text object can be highlighted with a single or double border.

#### **Unconditional Flash**

User can assign flashing attribute to any text object. An object can flash at three different speeds: Slow, Medium and Fast. By default no object is assigned the flashing attribute. If flashing is defined, slow flashing is selected by default.

Note: Data Entry objects (Coil and register) do not have flash attribute.

#### **Animation Properties:**

All objects can have their appearance changed using the animation property. Changes in the value of the tag associated with the animation property control the tag's appearance. There are three types of animation properties. They can be used in combination.

- 1. Show / Hide Animation
- 2. Flash Animation
- 3. Color Animation

Animation Pro	operties	×
💌 Show / <u>H</u> ide		Ok I
<u>T</u> ag	S0001 (Language )	
Show when	Within Range O Uut of Range	<u>C</u> ancel
Range	Low         0         0 <= Low <= High           High         65535         Low <= High <= 65535	Help
▼ Flash Slow	•	
Tag	S0001 (Language )	
<u>F</u> lash when	Within Range O Ut of Range	
Range	Low         0         0 <= Low <= High           High         65535         Low <= High <= 65535	
Color animatic	n	
ray	Fill color D 0 (0 to 999)	
	Line color D 0 (0 to 999)	
L		

**1.** Show / Hide Animation: Object is displayed only when the condition specified by the user is true. For example, shows the object only when the value of tag is between 100 (Low) and 200 (High). When the condition is false, the object is not displayed.

Animation Properties 🛛 🛛 🗙				
🔽 Show / <u>H</u> ide		<u>0</u> k		
<u>I</u> ag	S0001 (Language )			
Show when	Within Range C Out of Range	<u>C</u> ancel		
Range	Low         100         0 <= Low <= High	Help		
🗆 Flashi 🗍	<b>v</b>	1		
Tag	<b></b>			
Elash when	C Within Range C Outof Range			
Range	Low 0 <= Low <= High High Low <= High <= 65535			
Color animatio	n			
Tag	Fill color D ( 0 to 999 )			
	Line color D ( 0 to 999 )			

1. **Tag** : Select the tag to which Show / hide animation is to be attached.

2. **Show When** : The object is displayed either when condition is within range or out of range, according to user's choice.

3. Range : Enter the Low Limit and High Limit in the appropriate fields.

**2. Flashing Animation**: The designer can select three speeds; Slow, Medium, or Fast. When the condition specified by the user is true, the object will begin flashing. When the condition is false, the object is not flashed.

Animation Properties					
Show / <u>H</u> ide	·	<u>0</u> k			
Iag	<b>_</b>				
Show when	🖸 Within Range 🛛 Out of Range	<u>Cancel</u>			
Range	Low 0 <= Low <= High High Low <= High <= 65535	Help			
I▼ Flash Slov		ð			
Tag	S0001 (Language )				
<u>F</u> lash when	Within Range C Out of Range				
Range	Low         100         0 <= Low <= High				
Color animation					
Tay	Fill color D ( 0 to 999 )				
	Line color D ( 0 to 999 )				
L		1			

1. Flash : Select the speed at which object is to be flashed.

2. **Tag** : Select the tag to which Flash animation is to be attached.

- 3. Flash When : The object is flashed either when condition is within range or out of range, according to user's choice.
- 4. Range : Enter the Low Limit and High Limit in the appropriate fields.

**3.** Color Animation: The designer can change the foreground and background colors of an object. The value of the color index will be taken from foreground and background data registers specified here. For example, the value in D050 changes the foreground color of an object and the value in D051 changes the background color of the object.

Animation Properties					
☐ Show / <u>H</u> ide					
Tag	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
Show when	C Within Range C Out of Range	<u>C</u> ancel			
Range	Low 0 <= Low <= High High Low <= High <= 65535	Help			
🗆 Flash 📗	, ,	Ð			
Tag	v	]			
<u>F</u> lash when					
Range	Low 0 <= Low <= High High Low <= High <= 65535				
Color animation					
iag	Fill color D 0050 ( 0 to 999 )				
	Line color D 0051 (0 to 999 )				

# 5.2 Graphic Wizards

Graphic objects can be used to make the screen more user friendly by drawing pictures. Graphic objects are available only in models with graphic screens.

Objects		
<b>▶ T 🔊 🗂 ⊙</b>	📼 🕱 🗛	
	^∿`@`@(`∎) ┗┓	^ ⊾≭≈ ฿ ฿()
$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$	$\uparrow$
	Graphic Objects -	

Following are the Graphical Objects :

- 1. Line
- 2. Rectangle
- 3. Ellipse
- 4. Rounded Rectangle
- 5. Bargraph
- 6. Bitmap

### 5.2.1 Line

Draws a line of required length in any direction and at required location.

#### Procedure

- 1. Click on the 'Line' button in screen Objects Toolbar or Menu option. The shape of the mouse pointer will change.
- 2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and mark the area of object while holding the left mouse button.
- 3. Release button to add object on screen.

The dimensions and location can be changed by double clicking on the object



# 5.2.2 Rectangle

Draws a rectangle at the desired location and of required size.

#### Procedure

1. Click on the 'Rectangle' button in screen Objects Toolbar or Menu option. The shape of the mouse pointer will change.

2. Place the mouse pointer at the desired location and mark the area of the object while holding the left mouse button.

3. Release button to add object on screen.

Dimensions and location by double clicking on the object.



# 5.2.3 Ellipse

Draws an ellipse of the size at the insertion location.

#### Procedure

- 1. Click on the 'Ellipse' button in screen Objects Toolbar or Menu option. The shape of the mouse pointer will change.
- 2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and mark the area of object while holding the left mouse button.
- 3. Release button to add object on screen.

The designer can change the dimensions and location by double clicking on the object.

El	lipse		
	Dimensions		
	Top-Left Point	⊻ 89 💽	Width 162
	Top-Left Point	Y 51	Height 68
		_	

# 5.2.4 Rounded Rectangle

Draws a rectangle with rounded corners. The size and location can be varied.

#### Procedure

1. Click on the 'Round Rectangle' button in screen Objects Toolbar or Menu option. The shape of the mouse pointer will change.

2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location and mark the area of object while holding the left mouse button.

3. Release button to add object on screen.

The designer can change the dimensions and location of the object by double clicking on the object.



# 5.2.5 Bargraph

Bar graphs are register dependent objects which change their bar height or width according to the value in the register.

#### Procedure

1. Click on the 'Bargraph' button in screen Objects Toolbar or Menu option. The shape of the mouse pointer will change.

2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location, the following window will appear.



**1. Tag**: This is a list of tags available in the application.

**2. Data type**: This selects the type of data to be entered. Choices are Unsigned Integer, Signed Integer, Hexadecimal, BCD, Binary (1 word), Float and ASCII.

**3. Limits**: Limits of bar graph are 0 to 65535 for all data types except signed integer for which range for limits is -32768 to 32767.

4. Direction: User can define direction of bar graph from four options.

**Note:** Bar graph supports only show/hide animation.

Click 'Ok' button to add object to the screen.

### 5.2.6 Bitmap

A bitmap can be drawn on the HIMOS display. The bitmap cannot be larger than the display size of the HIMOS graphics display. The maximum size bitmap depends on the HIMOS model.

HI30X / HI12X	: Width 128 Pixels, Height 64 pixels
HI57X	: Width 320 Pixels, Height 240 pixels
HI120X	: Width 800 Pixels, Height 600 pixels

2. Color

Color specification vary from HIMOS model to model as specified below:

HI30X / HI12X / HI41X	: 2 color
HI570 / HI572 / HI573	: 16 colors Gray scales
HI575 / HI576 / HI577 / HI578 / HI120X	: 256 color

If the image has more colors than the color specification of the HIMOS display, then the image cannot be used directly. Use Microsoft® Paint or other photo editing software to convert the image to 256 / 16 or 2 colors as per display specification.

### Procedure

- 1. Click on the 'Bitmap' button in screen Objects Toolbar or Menu option. The shape of the mouse pointer will change.
- 2. Now place the mouse pointer at desired location window will appears.

Total	1:1					
	Bi	itmaps in Library	Size : 8.45 KB	Dimension	: 60 X 60 (pi	ixels)
		Browse image	Delete Selected Bitmap	<u>A</u> dd Se	elected Bitma Screen	ap To
		Picture Library				
Note :	Clic	k on the bitmap to select i			<u>C</u> lose	<u>H</u> elp

This window shows a list of the currently available bitmaps in the bitmap library.

Browse Image :User can add his own bitmap in the library by browsing the folder.Delete Selected Bitmap :User can delete selected bitmap from the library.Add Selected Bitmap To Screen :This will add selected bitmap on the screen at desired location.Picture Library :By clicking on this button, user can select the bitmap from the picture library as shown below.

Blowers Boilers Buildings		ته م	r ten	<i>(</i> a)
Electrical				
Laboratory Machines	BL0001.bmp	BL0002.bmp	BL0003.bmp	BL0004.bmp
Mototrs Pipes Process Pumps				
Sensors Tanks	BL0005.bmp	BL0006.bmp	BL0007.bmp	BL0008.bmp
Valves Vechicles		1	Ţ	
	BL0009.bmp	BL0010.bmp	BL0011.bmp	BL0012.bmp

From this library, user can select the various types of bitmaps like Blowers, Buildings, Valves etc.

Graphical Objects have certain properties, referred as Attributes. Attributes are useful for suggesting the importance of the particular object.

Basic Graphic Objects have the following attributes:

- **Pen Color :** This attribute defines the pattern for drawing the border. For Black and White Graphic display this can either be black or white.
- Fill Color : This attribute defines the fill color. Any closed object can be filled by the selected color.
- **Flash :** All the basic objects can be flashed using this attribute. Flashing can be done at three different speeds: Slow, Medium and Fast.

### 5.3 Wizards

Various wizards included for use in graphical HIMOS products are:

- 1. Button object :
- b. Word Button
- 2. Lamp Object:

a. Bit Button

- a. Bit Lamp
- b. Word Lamp
- 3. Analog Meter
- 4. Multiple Bargraph
- 5. Numeric Keypad
- 6. Trend Display

### 5.3.1 Bit Button

The bit button can be used to display the status bit and perform an action based on the task defined for the button.

To draw the object, click on the **Bit Button** icon and place it on the screen.

Button Page	$\mathbf{X}$			
Button Properties General Attributes Operation				
ON	Simulate			
Update Preview				
Select	Note :- The on text, off text and label properties are not applicable for bitmap style of button object.			
<u>Style</u> Generic square	Off state button properties are applicable only if feedback tag in operation page is defined.			
Text	Off Text			
Lext ON (Max 21)	Text UFF [Max 21]			
Font Language [English (United States)	Font Language English (United States)			
EmilPattern     Image: Color       Pattern Color     Background	Pattern Color			
	OK Cancel Apply			

The dialog box window enables the user to select button properties, attributes and operations.

Feed back tag status defines the shape of the button, on text, off text. Operation does not vary on the Feedback tag. The presentation of the button on the display is decided by the feedback tag.

**Note**: If the button style is non rectangular, the coordinates of the bounding rectangle are the coordinates of the object. In that case please press inside or on the exact boundary of the button.

### **Button Properties:**

### Style

A button can have a number of different styles:

- 1. Generic square
- 2. Generic circle
- 3. Generic rounded rectangle
- 4. Invisible button
- 5. From Picture Library
- 6. User defined image

### **On/Off Text**

A button can also be configured with the following properties:

- 1. **Text** : On / Off text, can be up to 21 characters.
- 2. Font : Select Windows® Font, Font style and Font size. Any font supported in the user's computer is acceptable.
- 3. Language : Display the list of languages depending upon the number of languages configured in the unit settings.
- 4. **Fill Pattern** : If the display style is a generic square, circle, or rounded rectangle; then the user can define different types of fill patterns for that style.
- 5. **Text Color** : Color of the text.
- 6. Background: Background color of text.

### Simulate

The user can simulate the ON and OFF text in various <u>l</u>anguages as configured in the wizard. These can be previewed in the preview window.

#### **General Attributes**

### Label selection

Parameters related to the bit button label can be configured if the Label selection is ON. (Check box 'Label' is selected).

- 1. Text : Label text, can be up to 21 characters.
- 2. Font : User can select windows® Font, Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Display the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit settings.
- 4. Pattern : User can select different fill patterns for label.
- 5. **Text Color** : Color of the text.
- 6. Background : Background color of text.
- 7. **Label position** : If the "Top" option is selected, then the label is displayed above the button as shown above. If the "Bottom" option is selected, then the label is shown at the bottom of the button.

# **Representing Data**

	Simulate
Button ON	Din & Of C Language English (United States)
Update Previo	w
Labersciebten	
Test Button (Max 21) Test Color	Label Positon
Text     Font       Text     Button       Language     English (United States)    Background	Label Positon
Test     Font       Test     Button       Language     English (United States)       Protection	Label Position C Top Pattern Color

#### Border

If the 'Border' option is selected (through check box), then the button is shown with the border.

#### Simulate

The designer can simulate the ON and OFF text in various languages configured in the wizard, and can see its preview in the preview window.

#### Operation

Button Page	
Button Properties   General Attributes   Operation	
1	Simulate
Button	On @ Off C
	Langungen English (United States)
Update Preview	
□ Operation Feedback Tag [\$0003_00 (Logger memory full status ) • •	
Task List Action for Touch Key	
	OK Cancel Acoly

#### Operation

**Feedback Tag** : If the button has the attribute "Feedback Tag" enabled, then the button shows ON and OFF states as defined in the configuration based on the status of feedback tag. Otherwise, the button displays only the ON state.

Task List

A bit button can be configured to perform tasks depending on the state of the button. To configure the bit button, click on **Action for Touch Key** button.

- 1. **Press Tasks** These tasks are performed only once when the button is pressed.
- 2. **Pressed Tasks** These tasks are performed as long as the button is pressed.
- 3. **Released Tasks** These tasks are performed when the button is released.

#### 5.3.2 Word Button

The word button performs a set of tasks based on the value of a tag register. Any two-byte tag can be defined as the state tag to control the word button.

To draw the object, click on the Word Button icon and place the object on the screen.

#### **State Properties**

Word Button			
State Properties	General Attributes		
Button Pro	operties		Preview
Style Ge	neric square	▼ Fill Color	
Text Prop	perties		Button
Τε	ext Button	Font	
Languag	ge English (United S	tates) 💌	
Text Col	or 📕 🖣		
			Update Preview
State Tag S0001 (Language )			
State conditio	n and tasks		
State No.	Low Limit	High Limit	Task List
1	0	100	Task list for state 1
2	101	200	Task list for state 2 Add new state
→ 3	201	β00	Task list for state 3
			▼
			OK Cancel

### **Button Properties**

#### Style

- A button can have a number of different display styles:
- 1. Generic square
- 2. Generic circle
- 3. Generic rounded rectangle
- 4. Invisible button
- 5. From Picture Library
- 6. User defined image

#### Fill Color

Fills the color for each state of the button.

### Size

If the style is Check box, Radio button or Toggle switch then user can have button size either 1x or 2x.

### **Text Properties**

The designer can select different text strings for each state if the text option is enabled.

- 1. **Text** : Button text maximum upto 20 characters.
- 2. Font : User can select Windows® Font, Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Display the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit settings.
- 4. Text Color : User can select the color of the text.
- 5. **Background** : User can select the background color of text.

### State Tag

This tag is used to determine the present state of the word button. This can be either unit tag or PLC tag.

### State conditions and tasks

This table gives information about the various states defined by the word button with their corresponding low and high limits and the task list for each range. The user can assign tasks to any of the defined states by clicking on the Task List button for the corresponding state. Up to 32 different states cam be defined.

### Add new state

Add a new state by clicking this button.

### Delete state

Delete an existing state by high lighting it and pressing this button.

### Simulate

The designer can simulate various languages configured in the wizard. Previews of each language can be simulated.

#### **General Attributes**

#### Label selection

The word button label can be configured when the Label selection is enabled. (Check box Label is selected).

- 1. **Text** : Label text maximum upto 14 characters.
- 2. Font : User can select a Windows® font, Font style and the Font size.
- 3. Language : Display the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit settings.
- 4. **Text Color** : User can select color of the text.
- 5. **Background** : User can select background color of text.
- 6. **Label position** : If the top option is selected then the label is shown above the button. If the bottom option is selected, then the label is shown at the bottom of the button.

# **Representing Data**

Word Button		X
State Properties General Attributes		
Simulate Language Spanish (Modern Sort)	Preview	Label Button
Label selection I Label Text Label Font	Text Color	Update Preview Label Position
Language Spanish (Modern Sort)	Background	C Bottom
		Aceptar Cancelar

#### **Button Border**

If the button border is enabled then the button is drawn with a border. This applies only to the "generic" style bit buttons.

#### Simulate

This allows the designer to preview what the button will look like. It is enabled when multiple languages are used or if the Feedback Tag check box is checked.

#### 5.3.3 Bit Lamp

The bit lamp can be used to display the on/off status of a coil or bit. To draw the object, click on the **Bit Lamp** button. Place the tool on the screen.

#### Lamp Properties:

A number of predefined lamp styles are available. The On and Off text properties are applicable only for the "generic" styles. The designer may create a custom lamp by selecting the "User defined image" and selecting images for the On and Off properties.

#### Style

- 1. Generic square
- 2. Generic circle
- 3. Generic rounded rectangle
- 4. From Picture Library
- 5. User defined Image

# **Representing Data**

Lamp	
Lamp properties General Attributes Operation	
ON	Simulate On (• Off (• Language English (United States) •
Update Preview	
Select <u>Style</u> Generic square	Note :- The on text, off text and label properties are not applicable for bitmap style of lamp.
On Text <u>T</u> ext ON (Max 21) Font Language English (United States) ▼ <u>F</u> ill Pattern ▼ T <u>ext Color</u> ▼	Off Text Text OFF (Max 21) Font Language English (United States) • Fill Pattern • Text Color
Pattern Color Background	Pattern Color Background Iv OK Cancel Apply

### On/Off Text

Configurable parameters:

- 1. **Text** : On /Off text, can be up to 21 characters.
- 2. Font : User can select Windows® Font , Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Displays the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit settings.
- 4. **Fill Pattern** : If display style is Generic square, Generic circle or Generic rounded rectangle; then user can have different types of fill patterns for that style.
- 5. Text Color : User can select color of the text.
- 6. **Background** : User can select background color of text.

# Simulate

User can simulate the ON and OFF text in various languages configured in the wizard, and can see its preview in the preview window.

#### **General Attributes**

Use this page to define attributes common to all wizards. A preview of the lamp object is displayed in the upper left corner of this page.

#### Label selection

Bit lamp label parameters can be configured if the Label selection is enabled by selecting the "Label" check box.

- 1. **Text** : Up to 21 characters can be entered for the label.
- 2. Font : This is used to change the standard Windows® Font, Font style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Displays the list of languages configured in the Unit Settings. When a different language is selected, the label text is entered for that language.
- 4. **Pattern** : Different fill patterns for the label can be selected.
- 5. **Text Color** : Select the color for the label text. The "color index" can be used for precise color matching.
- 6. **Background** : Select the color for the text background. The "color index" can be used for precise color matching.
- 7. Label Position : If the "Top" option is selected, the label is shown above the lamp. If the "Bottom" option is selected, the label is shown at the bottom of the lamp.

Lamp
Lamp properties General Attributes Operation
Simulate
Lamp     On        ON     Off        Update Preview     Update Preview
Text Lamp (Max 21) Text Color Pattern
Language English (United States)
Protection Border
Access level to show object 0 (0 to 255)
OK Cancel Apply

#### Border

If the "Border" check box is enabled, the lamp is shown with a border. This is the default condition.

#### Simulate

This allows the designer to preview how the button will look like. It is enabled when multiple languages are used or if the Feedback Tag check box is checked.

### Operation

The Feedback Tag determines which bit tag controls the state of the lamp.

amp	$\mathbf{X}$
Lamp properties General Attributes Operation	
Lamp   ON     Update Preview     Operation     Feedback Tag \$0003_00 (Logger memory full status)	
OK	Cancel <u>Apply</u>

### 5.3.4 Word Lamp

The Word Lamp performs a set of tasks and displays different lamps depending on the value of a register tag. Any two byte tag can be defined as the State Tag. This tag controls the current state of the word lamp.

To draw the object, click on the Word Lamp button. Place the tool on the screen.

#### **State Properties**
Word Lamp							X
State Properties	General Attributes						
Button Pro	pperties			Preview			
Style G	eneric square	▼ Fill Color					
- Text Pro	perties						
🔽 Te	ĸt				Lamp		
Te	xt Lamp	Font					
Languag	e English (United Sta	ates) 💌					
Text Cold	or 📕 🔽					Update	Preview
State Tag	S0001 (Language)		•	Simulate Langua	age English (Unite	d States) 💌	
State conditio	n and tasks		1 1				
State No.	Low Limit	High Limit	⊨				
1	0	100		Add new state			
2	101	200					
<b>→</b> 3	201	300		Delete state 3			
			-				
						ок	Cancel

## Style

Each state can use any one of the different types of display styles. Available styles are:

- 1. Generic square
- 2. Generic circle
- 3. Generic rounded rectangle
- 4. From Picture Library
- 5. User defined Image

#### **Fill Color**

Select the lamp color for each state.

# Size

If the style is "Lamp", "Indicator", or "LED", the lamp size can be changed from 1x to 2x.

# **Text Properties**

Different text strings can be specified for each state if the Text option is enabled.

- 1. **Text** : Up to 20 characters of text can be displayed.
- 2. Font : Used to change the Windows® Font , Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Displays the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit settings.
- 4. **Text Color** : Select the color of the text.
- 5. **Background** : Select the text background color.

# State Tag

This tag is used to determine the present state of the word lamp. This can be either a HIMOS unit tag or a PLC tag.

### State conditions and Tasks

This table is a list of the states defined for the word lamp with their corresponding high and low limits. Up to 32 different states can be defined.

#### Add new state

Clicking this button adds a new state to the list.

#### Delete state

Select a particular state by highlighting it, and use this button to delete it.

#### Simulate

User can simulate various languages configured in the wizard, and can see its preview in the preview window.

### **General Attributes**

#### Label selection

If the Word Lamp Style is "Generic", then the lamp can have a label by enabling the "Label" check box.

- 1. **Text** : Up to 14 characters of label text can be defined.
- 2. Font : Select the Windows® Font, Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Displays the list of languages configured in the HIMOS settings.
- 4. **Text Color** : Selects the color of the text.
- 5. **Background** : Selects the background text color.
- 6. Label position : If the "Top" option is selected, the label is shown above the lamp. If the "Bottom" option is selected, the label is shown below the lamp.

Word Lamp	
State Properties General Attributes	1
Preview	
Simulate Language English (United States)	Label Lamp
Label selection	Update Preview
Text     Label       Text     Label       Font     Text Color       Language     English (United States)       Background     Implied	C Bottom
Protection Access level to show object Access level to edit data	Button Border
	OK Cancel

## **Button Border**

If the "Button Border" check box is enabled, the lamp is shown with a border. This is the default condition.

### 5.3.5 Multiple Bargraph

Bar graphs are register dependent objects which change their height or width according to the value in the register.

This wizard can be configured to view multiple bargraphs (up to 4) simultaneously. Each bargraph can be configured with individual colors and limit values.

To draw the object, click on the **Multiple Bargraph** button. Place the tool on the screen and select the number of bars. The style and width for all bars can be specified. Individual bar properties are set for the bar tag, color, as well as the Maximum and Minimum limits.

#### **Bargraph Properties**



#### Number of bars

Enter or select the number of bars you want in a single wizard. Up to four bargraphs can be defined in a single wizard.

#### Background color

This is the background color for the entire bargraph object.

#### Gap width

The Gap Width is the space, in pixels, between any two bars. The minimum gap width is 0 pixels. The maximum is 53 pixels.

#### Bar width

The designer can specify the bar width, in pixels, for all bars. The minimum gap width is 1 pixel. The maximum is 68 pixels.

## Style

A multiple bargraph object can have any of four different styles.

### Simulate

The designer can preview the bargraph by entering suitable values in the corresponding simulate value field. Changing the "Language" displays the text associated with each language.

### **General Attributes**

argraph Properties General Attributes Axis   Bar 1   Bar 2   Bar	r 3   Bar 4
Preview Bar graph Avis 500 166 Bar1_Bar2_Bar3_Bar4	Simulate Value for bar 1 250 Value for bar 2 400 Value for bar 3 500 Value for bar 4 200 Language English (United States)
Label selection         Font         Text       Bar graph         Language       English (United States)         Protection       Access level to show object         Access level to edit data       0	Text Color Label Position Text Color Top Background V Bottom Bottom V Border Data Type Unsigned integer

#### Label selection

If the "Label" check box is enabled, the designer can specify the following label parameters:

- 1. Text :
- Label Text. Up to 14 characters of text can be specified for the label. 2. Font : Specify the Windows® Font , Font Style and Font size desired.
- Displays the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit 3. Language : settings.
- 4. Text Color : Selects the color of the text.
- 5. Background : Selects the background color of the text.
- 6. Label position : If the "Top" option is selected, the label is shown above the bargraph. If the "Bottom" option is selected, the label is shown below the bargraph.

## Border

If the "Border" option is enabled, the bargraph is shown with a border. This is the default condition.

# Data Type

User can have tags of following data types representing values of bargraph :

- 1. Unsigned integer
- 2. Signed integer
- 3. Hexadecimal
- 4. BCD
- 5. Float

## Simulate

The designer can simulate the label text of various languages configured in the wizard, and can see a preview in the preview window.

#### Axis

#### Axis properties

User can enable or disable axis by clicking on the "Axis" option.

#### Axis color

Color of the axis can be defined.

#### Axis label

Parameters related to the axis label can be configured here if the Label selection is enabled.

- 1. Text : Axis label text maximum upto 12 characters.
- 2. Language : Display the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit Settings.
- 3. Text Color : Selects the color of the text.
- 4. **Background** : Selects the background color of text.

#### **Display Range**

If enabled, minimum and maximum display range of value scale axis can be specified.

#### Divisions

If enabled, major and minor divisions of value scale axis can be specified.



### Bar <bar number>

Bar Properties 1. Min Tag Value : 2. Max Tag Value : 3. Tag :	Lower limit for the corresponding bargraph. Higher limit for the corresponding bargraph. A HIMOS unit tag or a PLC tag controlling the corresponding bargraph.
Bar Color 1. Line Color : 2. Fill Color :	Border color for the corresponding bargraph. Interior color for the corresponding bargraph
Bar Label Parameters related to th 1. Text :	he bar label can be configured here if the Bar label selection is enabled. Up to 12 characters of axis label text can be defined. Labels may overlap if there is insufficient room.
2. Language :	Displays the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit settings.
3. Text Color :	Selects the color of the text.
4. Background :	Selects the background color of text.

Multiple Bargraph	$\mathbf{X}$
Bargraph Properties General Attributes Axis Bar 1 Bar 2 Bar 3 Bar	4
Preview Bar graph Axis 560 333 166 Bar1_Bar2_Bar3_Bar4	Simulate Value for bar 1 250 Value for bar 2 400 Value for bar 3 500 Value for bar 4 200 Language English (United States)
Update Preview	
Bar Properties	Label
Min Tag Value 0 Line Color Fill Color Kang	Bar label guage English (United States)  Text Bar1
Te:	xt Color Background

# 5.3.6 Analog Meter

The Analog Meter wizard is useful to represent parameter values such as temperature or pressure from a HIMOS Unit or PLC tag.

To draw the object, click on the **Analog Meter** button. Place the tool on the screen. This wizard represents the word register on a analog meter. The dialog box has four pages: Meter Foreground properties, Meter Background properties, General Properties, and Operation. Foreground Properties define the number of meter divisions and display range. The Background Properties define needle color, meter style, and range color settings. The General attributes define the label properties and enable or disable the border. The Operation page defines meter start and end angles, control tag and the meter range.

### **Meter Foreground Properties**

Meter Foreground properties define the display range and meter divisions.

#### **Display Range**

If enabled, the values of the minimum display range, maximum display range, and major divisions will be shown on the meter. The limits for the minimum and maximum display range are dependent upon the data type of the tag that is assigned for the meter.

#### Divisions

If enabled, the number of major and minor divisions on the meter scale can be specified.

#### Simulate

The user can simulate the text for the various languages configured in the wizard, the tag value with its corresponding deflection and see a preview in the window.

Analog Meter	
Meter Foreground Properties   Meter Background Properties   General Attributes	Operation
Preview	Simulate Value 200 Language English (United States)
Update Preview	
Display Range Display Range Min  Max 500 Maju	or 4 (1-10) Minor 2 (1-5)
	OK Cancel

## **Meter Background Properties**

Meter Background properties define the color settings for needle and meter style.

Analog Meter
Meter Foreground Properties Meter Background Properties General Attributes Operation
Preview Simulate Value 200 Language English (United States)
Update Preview
Meter Background
Meter Color Background
Color Range Settings
Color Range Color Patches (Max. 5)
OK Cancel

#### **Color Range Settings**

User can set different color ranges, which will represent the sections along the meter axis depending upon the colors set in the configuration. User can have up to 5 different ranges. Each color range will have

1. Color Patches :

User can select number of display ranges from here. He can have up to 5 different display ranges.

2. Color Selection box : 3. Color limit ranges :

From this user can select the color out of the available for the corresponding unit. User can assign different values representing different color ranges.

# **General Attributes**

# Label selection

Parameters related to the meter label can be configured here if the Label selection is enabled. (Check box 'Label' is selected).

- 1. Text Up to 14 characters of label text may be specified. :
- 2. Font Select the Windows® Font, Font Style and Font size. :
- Displays the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the 3. Language : HIMOS Unit Settings.
- 4. Text Color : Selects the color of the text.
- 5. Background : Selects the background color of text.
- If the "Top" option is selected, the label is shown above the meter. If the "Bottom" option is 6. Label position : selected, the label is shown below the meter.

## Border

If the "Border" is enabled, the meter is shown with a border. This is the default condition.

Analog Meter		X
Meter Foreground Prop	perties Meter Background Properties General Attributes Operation	
Preview	Label Value 200 Language English (United States)	
Label selection -	Label Position	
Text Label	Font Background C Bol	tom
- Protection-	Access level to show object 0 Meter Border	
	ОК	Cancel

## Operation

**Meter Operation** 

- 1. Meter Start Angle : The value indicating the start angle, in degrees, of the meter scale.
- 2. Meter End Angle : The value indicating the end angle, in degrees, of the meter scale.
- 3. **Start Tag Value** : The minimum value to display on the meter scale.
- 4. End Tag Value : The maximum value to display on the meter scale.
- 5. **Tag** : A HIMOS unit tag or PLC tag that the meter uses for needle deflection.

## Data Type

The following data types can be used with the meter -

- 1. Unsigned integer 2. Signed integer
- 3. Hexadecimal 4. BCD

The meter object only displays a two byte tag.

# Simulate

The designer can simulate the label text of various languages configured in the wizard and can see a preview in the preview window.

Analog Meter	
Meter Foreground Properties Meter Background Properties General Attributes	Operation
Preview Label 125 0 125 500	Simulate Value 200 Language English (United States)
Update Preview	
Meter Operation Meter Start Angle	r End Angle 180 0 180
Start Tag Value 0 End	d Tag Value 500 270
Tag S0001 (Language )	Data Type Unsigned integer 🗨
	OK Cancel

# 5.3.7 Real Time Trend

The Real Time Trend object is a graphical representation of a tag's value in the current time period. The time value comes from the real time clock in the HIMOS unit. The tag's value is plotted on the Y axis and updated every second.

#### **Trend Properties**

- 1. **Number Of Tags** : The trends of up to 4 tags can be displayed.
- 2. **Show Grid** : The Show Grid check box determines whether or not the background grid is displayed.
- 3. **Span Time** : The value, in seconds, representing the span of the X axis. The maximum value of span time is 65535 seconds.
- 4. **Span Time Tag** : If this option is enabled, the Span Time is controlled by the tag specified.
- 5. **Fill Color** : The background color of the trend object.
- 6. **Grid Color** : Select the color of the grids for the trend object.

Image: Freedom       Image	Trend Trend : Properties Value scale properties Time scale properties	Tag1   Tag2
Trend Properties         No of 2       ✓ Show Grids         tags       Span time Tag         Time 60       Seconds         Soan       Soconds	Trend 80 60 40 20 0 0 Update	Simulate Language English (United States)
Fill     Grid Color     Font     Font     Color       Error Message     Font     5x7     Text Color     Data Type     Unsigned int	Trend Properties No of 2 Tags Show Grids Span 60 Seconds S0001 (Language) Fill Grid Color Error Message Font 5x7 Text Color V	Label Language English (United States)  Text Trend Font Color

## **Error Message**

Many of the trend object's properties can be determined at run time through the use a tag. If the value of the tag is out of the proper range for the property, an error message will be displayed. The text display properties can be modified.

- 1. Font : Select the Windows® Font , Font Style and Font size.
- 2. Text Color : Color of the error message to be displayed.

#### Label

Parameters related to the trend label can be configured here if the Label selection is enabled. (Check box 'Label' is selected).

- 1. Text : Label text maximum upto 25 characters.
- 2. Font : Select the Windows® Font , Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Display the list of languages depending upon number of languages configured in the Unit settings.
- 4. **Color** : Color of the text.

# Data Type

The trend object can have the following data types:

- 1. Unsigned integer
- 2. Signed integer
- 3. Hexadecimal
- 4. BCD
- 5. Float

Only 2 byte tags are supported.

### Value Scale Properties

The value scale defines the scaling properties of the Y axis of the trend object.

#### **Grid Properties**

No of Grids : Determines the number of horizontal grid lines on the Y axis.

#### Limits

If enabled, the Limits selection determines the minimum and maximum values to be displayed on the Y axis.

- 1. Minimum :
- The smallest displayed value on the Y axis. The range is from 0 to 65,535. If enabled, the minimum is determined by a tag instead of a constant.
- 2. Minimum tag : If enabled, the minimum is determined by a tag instead of a constant.
  3. Maximum : The highest displayed value on the Y axis. The range is from 0 to 65535
- 4. **Maximum tag** : If enabled, the minimum is determined by a tag instead of a constant.
- 5. Text color :
  - color : The color of the values on the Y scale.

Trend	X
Trend : Properties Value scale properties Time scale properties Tag1 Tag2	
Preview 100 Trend 80 60 40 20 0 0 Update	
Grid Properties       Limits         No of Grids       [1 to 10]         Minimum       0         [0 to 65535]       Tag         S0001 (Language)	
Show units Text color Maximum 100 [0 to 65535] Tag S0001 (Language)	]
	oplu

### Time scale properties

### **Grid Properties**

No of Grids : If the grid option is enabled, up to 10 grids can be selected for the X axis display.

### Text properties

- 1. **Scale** : If enabled, the real time grid values are shown along the time scale axis.
- 2. **Format** : Scale formatting can be either HH:MM:SS or HH:MM.
- 3. **Color** : Determines the preferred color of the X axis scale information.

Trend
Trend : Properties Value scale properties Time scale properties Tag1 Tag2 Preview
100 Trend   80 60   40 60   20 60   0 60
Grids properties         No of Grids       [1 to 10]         Color
OK Cancel Apply

# **Specific Tag Information**

Trend		
Trend : Propa	erties Value scale properties Time scale properties Tag1	└ Tag2   - Simulate English (United States) ▼
Color		
		OK Cancel Apply

- 1. **Tag** : Defines a 2 byte tag to be used for the trend information to be plotted.
- 2. **Color** : Defines the color for the trend information to be plotted.

# 5.3.8 Numeric Keypad

A numeric keypad is required to enter data in a touch screen product. The user can select either a static or popup keypad. A static keypad is present on the same screen as the data entry objects. If a popup keypad is required, the designer needs to select the popup keypad option and the popup screen desired for the data entry. If you select Static keypad, the **Display Area** check box is always disabled. But if you select Popup keypad, you have choice to enable or disable the Display area according to your application.

Key Pad		
Key Pad Properties Key Properties General Attributes		
Preview Key Pad	Style	
4 5 6 CLR 7 8 9 0 ENT		
Simulate Language English (United States) Update Preview		
Key Gap     Key Size       Width     10       Height     10       Height     10		
Display Area	Title Bar Color I	ll keys
	ОК	Cancel

# **Key Pad Properties**

1.	Update Preview :	As changes are made, the user can preview the effect.
2.	Simulate Language :	Used to simulate the text of the languages configured for the object in the
		preview window.
3.	Style :	Used to select the keypad style from the list.
4.	Display Area :	This option is active only for popup keypads.
	Text Color :	Select the color for the text displayed in value area.
	Background	:Select the background color in the display area.
5.	Key Gap Width :	Determines the spacing between key widths. The minimum is 7 and the maximum is 48 pixels.
6.	Key Gap Height :	Determines the spacing between key heights. The minimum is 7 and the maximum is 48 pixels.
7.	Key Size Width :	Determines the width of all keys. The minimum is 25 and the maximum is 56 pixels.
8.	Key Size Height :	Determines the height of all keys. The minimum is 15 and the maximum is 147 pixels.

- 9. Title Bar Color :
- 10. Background Color :
- 11. Color for All Keys :

:Selects the color for the title bar.Color :Selects the background color of the display area.Keys :User can select the color for all the keys.Key Color :Selects the key color.Text Color :Selects the color of text to be displayed on display area.

## **Key Properties**

Key Pad
Key Pad Properties Key Properties General Attributes
Preview     1   2   4   5   6   CLR   7   8   9   8   9   8   9  <
Key Properties       Key Color         Key Preview       Key Text         Key Text       Key Text         Language       English (United States)
Key Task     Numeric key 1       Note :- For changing the key properties, click the desired key in preview and then change its properties.

Key properties available to the user :

- 1. Update preview :
- 2. Simulate :
- 3. Key Color :
- 4. Key Text check box :
- 5. Text Color :
- 6. Key Text :
- 7. Language : 8. Key task :
- Selects the key text color. Up to 3 characters can be used for the key text.

User can check preview of defined keypad.

Enables key text and language entry.

Selects the key color.

Displays language depending upon number of languages configured in the application. This determines the task to be performed by the key.

Simulates the text of various languages configured in the object in the preview window.

### **General Attributes**

Key Pad	X
Key Pad Properties Key Properties General Attributes	
Preview         I       2         I	
Label Selection Text Key Pad Font Text Color Language English (United States) Background	
Protection     O       Access level to show object     O       Access level to edit data     O	
OK Cance	

1. Simulate :

2. Label Selection :

Text :

Used for simulation of the text for each of the languages defined in the Unit Settings. If enabled, this allows the user to determine the attributes of the label.

**xt** : Up to 20 characters of text can be specified for the keypad label.

Font : Select the Windows® Font and Font Style.

**Text Color** : Select a text color. The color index may be useful for color matching.

Background : Select a background color. The color index may be useful for color matching.

- 3. **Update Preview** : This allows the user to preview the design.
- 4. **Key Pad Border** : Keypad is shown with border if "Keypad Border" option is enabled.

**Note**: Options that are not supported for this model are grayed out.

# 5.3.9 ASCII Keypad

ASCII keypad is used to enter the data in ASCII format.

#### **Key Pad Properties**

- 1. Key Width :
- Determines the width of the keypad. The minimum is 25 and the maximum is 37 pixels.
- 2. **Key Height** : Determines the height of the keypad. The minimum is 24 and the maximum is 28 pixels.
- 3. **Gap Width** : Determines the spacing between the key width. The minimum is 2 and the maximum is 3 pix els.
- 4. Gap Height : Determines the spacing between key heights. The minimum is 2 and the maximum is 3 pixels.
  5. Key text color : Selects the key text color from the color palette.
- 6. **Key fill color** : Selects the key fill color from color palette.
- 7. **Keypad color** : Selects the keypad color from color palette.

Keypad Prev	propertie iew	≫   Gei	neral att	ributes						Simulate
	ASCIT A 8 A a I Q Q Y Y Home	eypoo ! 1 9 B b J J J Z Z End	@ 2 C C K k S S S P	# 3 D d L I T t BS	\$ 4 + E e M m U U u	% 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	∧ 6 9 9 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	A clr P p clr Clr Clr P p date P	review	Language English (United States)
Proper Key wid Gap wid	ties Ith 34 Ith 2	÷	Key ha Gap h	eight 2	4	Ke Ke Ke	y text co iey fill co sypad co	blor		Key preview

### **General Attributes**

### **Label Properties**

- 1. Language : Selects the language for the label. For languages other than English, those languages must be installed on the PC.
- 2. **Text** : Label text maximum upto 20 characters.
- 3. Text Color : Selects the test color from the color palette.
- 4. Background : Selects the background color from the color palette.

#### **Display Properties**

- 1. **Display field** : If this check box is enabled, display area is available.
- 2. **Text font** : Font of size either 5 X 7 or 10 X 14 can be selected, if Display field is enabled.
- 3. **Text Color** : Selects the test color from the color palette, if Display field is enabled.
- 4. Background : Selects the background color from the color palette, if Display field is enabled.

Simulate : This allows the user to preview the keypad.

Ascii ke Keypac	<b>ypad</b> I properties General	attributes			×
Prev	view			Simulate	
	ASCII keypad				
	~ ! @ * 1 2	# \$ % 3 4 5	∧ & 6 7		
	<u> </u>	<u> </u>			
	A B C a b c	D E F d e f	G H g h	- Language	
	I J K	L M N	O P o p	English (United States) 💌	
	QRS	T U V			
	Y Z { y Z [		CLR		
	Home End SP	BS << >>	Shift ENT		
			Update Preview		
Labe	el Properties			Display properties	
	Label Languag	e English (United Stat	es) 💌	Display field	
	Text	ASCII keypad	( Max 20 )	Text font 5 x 7 💌	
	Text color	+		Text color	
	Background			Background 🔤	
		Color Index : 23	6		
				OK Cancel Apply	

# 5.3.10 Configuration of Analog Inputs

Input Channel	System Register	Data Register (For displaying contents of the channel)
CH0	S48	D140
CH1	S49	D141
CH2	S50	D142
CH3	S51	D143

# Analog Input Ranges (For Voltage, Current & RTD)

Analog Input Type	S Value
0-100 mV Linear Input	1
0-100 mV NonLinear Input	2
0-50 mV Linear Input	3
0-50 mV NonLinear input	4
0-20 mA Linear Input	5
0-20 mA NonLinear Input	6
4-20 mA Linear Input	7
4-20 mA NonLinear Input	8
RTD Alpha1 Input	9
RTD Alpha2 Input	10

# Analog Input Ranges for Thermocouple

Analog Input Type	S Value	Temperature
B-Type Input	11	200 to 1820 °C
R-Type Input	12	0 to 1768 °C
S-Type Input	13	0 to 1768 °C
E-Type Input	14	-200 to 750 °C
J-Type Input	15	-200 to 760 °C
K-Type Input	16	-200 to 1250 °C
N-Type Input	17	-200 to 1300 °C
T-Type Input	18	-200 to 400 °C

# 5.3.11 Configuration of Analog Outputs

Output Channel	Data Register		
CH1	D144		
CH2	D145		

# TASK MANAGEMENT

In this chapter. . . .

- Application Task List
- Screen Task List
- Key Task List

## Tasks

A task is something that the HIMOS unit needs to accomplish. In various areas, there are "Task Lists" where the designer can specify which tasks need to be performed. The order of the tasks in a task list determines which task is performed when. The task lists will be found in each of the following sections:

- 1. Application Task List
- 2. Screen Task List
- 3. Key Task List
- 4. Wizard Task List

## 6.1 Application TaskList

Using this screen, two types of task lists may be defined.

- 1. Power On Tasks : Tasks that are executed once when the HIMOS unit is powered on.
- 2. Global Tasks : Tasks that are executed every HIMOS cycle.

Using the Up and Down buttons, the order of task execution can be changed. The Delete button removes a task from the task list.

Application ( Power-on and Global ) Task-lists	
Select a Task to add	<u>C</u> lose <u>H</u> elp
• Power-on Tasks	
Goto Screen number : 00001 Write 100 to Tag S0001	* * * *
Global Tasks	
Add 10 to Tag S0001	<ul> <li></li></ul>

Select a Task to add



	: Accepts the selected task and closes
Up arrow 👔	: Selected task is shifted up.
Down arrow 📕	: Selected task is shifted down.
Delete	: Selected task is deleted.

# 6.2 Screen TaskList

These tasks are related to a specific screen. When a screen is displayed, the tasks defined for that screen are executed.

## 1. Before showing Tasks :

These tasks are executed once just before the screen is displayed. Any screen specific initialization can be defined under this option.

# 2. While showing Tasks :

These tasks are executed continuously as long as the screen is displayed.

# 3. After hiding Tasks :

These tasks are executed one time after the screen is hidden.

HIMOSOFT : Task-lists of Screen [ 1 : Screen1	]
	Select a Task to add
Screen Preview	C 'Before showing' Tasks
	Write 10 to Tag D0000 Write 100 to Tag D0000
DØ :	
D1 : ^^^^	✓ While showing' Tasks
	Add Tag D0001 to Tag D0000

## Example:

Let's suppose that Screen 1 is currently being displayed. Any tasks in the "While Showing" task list will be performed. An active PLC block sets the screen trigger register to another value. The various task lists will follow this path:

- 1. While clearing screen 1, the "After Hiding" task list for screen 1 is performed.
- 2. The "Before Showing" task for screen 2 is performed.
- 3. Screen 2 is displayed.
- 4. The "While Showing" task list is performed continuously for Screen 2.
- 5. When another screen is called for, the "After Hiding" task list of screen 2 is performed.

# Task Management

## Select a Task to add

User can select a Task from the list of Tasks available.

	Select a Task to add	Close
Screen Preview	Goto Screen Goto Next Screen Goto Previous Screen	
 D0: aaaaaaa	Write value to Tag Add a constant value to Tag Subtract a constant value from Tag Add Tag B to Tag A Subtract Tag B from Tag A Turn Bit On Turn Bit Off Toggle Bit	* *
	Copy TagB to TagA Swap TagA and TagB Print Data Set RTC Copy Tag to STR Copy Tag to LED Delay Wait	* * ×
	Copy HIMOS block to HIMOS/PLC block Copy HIMOS/PLC block to HIMOS block Copy RTC to PLC block Execute PLC Logic Block Goto Popup Screen	*

Close <u>Close</u>	- Accepts selected task.
Up arrow 👔	- Selected task is shifted up.
Down arrow 🜉	- Selected task is shifted down.
Delete	- Selected task is deleted.

# 6.3 Key Tasklist

User can define task on key events like -

Press Tasks :	These tasks are performed only once when the key is pressed.
Pressed Tasks:	These tasks are performed as long as the key is pressed.
Released Tasks :	These tasks are performed when the key is released.

# 6.3.1 For Keypad Products

**1. Global Keys Tasklist** - Tasks defined under this option are executed for every HMI cycle regardless of the screen displayed.

Global Keys' Task-lists				
			Select a Task to add	Close
				<u>H</u> elp
	1 2	3	• ' <u>P</u> ress' Tasks	
	4 5	6	Goto Previous Screen	•
F1 F2 F3 F4	7 8	9		4
PREV 🔅 🔅	ESC 0	ENT		×
			C 'Presse <u>d</u> ' Tasks	S
				•
				4
				×
			<u> </u>	
				1
Single Key C Two sime	nultaneous ke	eys		*
Indicates undefined Global-Key	ended Keyp	ad		×

Close Close	: Accepts selected task.
Up arrow	: Selected task is shifted up.
Down arrow 🖊	: Selected task is shifted down.
Delete	: Selected task is deleted.
Single Key	: A task defined to one key.
Two simultaneous keys	: Use two keys to create a task event.

# Task Management

2. Screen Keys' Tasklist - Tasks defined under this option are executed only for the currently displayed screen . These are screen dependent tasks.

HIMOSOFT : Task-lists of Screen [ 1 : Scre	een1 ]
	Select a Task to add
Screen Preview	C ' <u>B</u> efore showing' Tasks
	Write 0 to Tag D0000 Write 0 to Tag D0001
D0 : ^^^^	While showing Tasks      Add 1 to Tag D0000      Add 1 to Tag D0001      Wait till D0000 <= 20      Wait till D0001 <= 10      Write 0 to Tag D0000      Write 0 to Tag D0001      Write 0 to Tag D0001
	C '∆fter hiding' Tasks
Close Close : Accepts	s selected task.
Up arrow 1 Selected	d task is shifted up.
Down arrow 🔹 : Selected	d task is shifted down.
Delete : Selected	d task is deleted.

Single Key : If this option is selected, a task is defined to one key.

: If this option is selected, a task is defined to a combination of two keys. Two simultaneous keys

Note: Screen Keys' Tasklist has higher priority over Global Keys' Tasklist when the screen is displayed.

×

# 6.3.2 For Touch screen Products

## **Touch-Screen Tasklist**

To use this task we need a Button object (Bit Button or Word Button) on the screen. When the user touches within the Button area, the associated task is executed.

Close Close	- Accepts selected task.
Up arrow 🔒	- Selected task is shifted up.
Down arrow 🚺	- Selected task is shifted down.
Delete	- Selected task is deleted.

Touch-Screen Task-lists	
Select a Task to add	<u>C</u> lose <u>H</u> elp
C ' <u>P</u> ress' Tasks	
Add 10 to Tag S0001	* * * *
Pressed' Tasks	
Goto Previous Screen	<ul> <li>✿</li> <li>●</li> <li>×</li> </ul>
' <u>R</u> eleased' Tasks	
Goto Next Screen	<b>↑</b> ↓ ×

## 6.4 Description of Tasks

## Goto Screen

This task is used to jump to any available screen from list of available screens. When we add Goto Screen task in the task list, a dialog box is displayed. It shows list of screens defined in the application.

Go	to Scre	en	
1	No.	Name	
	00001	Screen1 Screen2 Screen3	
			Ok Cancel Help

To add this task, select a screen from the list and press 'Ok'. When this task is executed, control jumps to the selected screen.

## Goto Next Screen

When this task is executed, control jumps to next available screen. If user defines this task on the last screen, then after execution of this task "Screen not defined " message appears for 2 seconds and control comes back to last screen displayed.

## Goto Previous Screen

When this task is executed, control jumps to previous available screen. If user defines this task on the first screen, then after execution of this task "Screen not defined " message appears for 2 seconds and control comes back to last screen displayed.

## • Write Value To Tag

A constant value can be written to a tag using this task, provided the tag is not a read-only tag.

Tag Operations			×
Tag D0000(D0)		•	<u>0</u> k
Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	<u>C</u> ancel
<ul> <li>Tag = Number</li> <li>Tag + Number</li> <li>Tag - Number</li> <li>Tag A = Tag A + Tag B</li> <li>Tag A = Tag A - Tag B</li> </ul>	C On C Off C Hold On C Hold Off C Toggle	C Copy Tag B To Tag A Swap Tag A and Tag B C Copy Tag to STR C Copy Tag to LED	
Number 10	535 ]	⊂ BC <u>D</u> [0 to 9999]	]
C Signed [-32768 to C Hexadecimal [0000	32767 ] D to FFFF ]	C Binary [16 bits ]	

# Task Management

E.g..- Tag = Number

This task is executed on register tag listed under Tag option. User can write only two bytes number in selected tag. If tag is defined as

- 1 byte -- Low byte transfer to low-byte.
- 2 byte Low and High bytes transfers respective bytes of tag.
- 4 byte Only Low word transfer to tag.

For this task default setting is shown under 'Register operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. User can select number type - unsigned int, Signed, Hexadecimal, BCD and Binary.

User can select number type - unsigned int, Signed, Hexadecimal, BCD and Binary.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

# • Add a Constant Value To Tag

This tag is used for adding a constant value to the current value of the tag.

Tag Operations			×
Tag D0000 (D0) Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	<u>O</u> k <u>C</u> ancel
C Tag = Number Tag + Number Tag · Number Tag A = Tag A + Tag B Tag A = Tag A · Tag B <u>Number</u> 100	C On C Off C Hold On C Hold Off C Toggle	C Copy Tag B To Tag A Swap Tag A and Tag B C Copy Tag to STR C Copy Tag to LED	<u>H</u> elp
<ul> <li>Unsigned [ 0 to 655</li> <li>Signed [ -32768 to</li> <li>Hexadecimal [ 0000</li> </ul>	535 ] ( 32767 ] ( D to FFFF ]	C BC <u>D</u> [ 0 to 9999 ] C <u>B</u> inary [ 16 bits ]	

E.g.- Tag = Tag + Number

This task is executed on register tag listed under Tag option. User can add only two byte number in selected tag.

Tag Type	Operation	Number	Result
1 Byte	+	2 Byte	1 Byte
2 Byte	+	2 Byte	2 Byte
4 Byte	+	2 Byte	Lower 2 Byte

For this task default setting is shown under 'Register operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. User can select number type - unsigned int, Signed, Hexadecimal, BCD and Binary. Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

# Subtract a Constant Value From Tag

This task is used to subtract a constant value from the current value of a tag.

Tag Operations			X
Tag D0000(D0)		•	<u>0</u> k
Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	<u>C</u> ancel
<ul> <li>C Tag = Number</li> <li>C Tag + Number</li> <li>C Tag - Number</li> <li>C Tag A = Tag A + Tag B</li> <li>C Tag A = Tag A - Tag B</li> <li>Number 50</li> </ul>	C On C Off C Hold On C Hold Off C Toggle	C Copy Tag B To Tag A C Swap Tag A and Tag B C Copy Tag to STR C Copy Tag to LED	
<ul> <li>Unsigned [0 to 655</li> <li>Signed [-32768 to</li> <li><u>H</u>exadecimal [0000</li> </ul>	535 ] 32767 ] D to FFFF ]	○ BC <u>D</u> [0 to 9999] ○ <u>B</u> inary [16 bits]	

E.g..- Tag = Tag - Number

This task is executed on register tag listed under Tag option. User can subtract only two byte number in selected tag.

Tag Type	Operation	Number	Result
1 Byte	-	2 Byte	1 Byte
2 Byte	-	2 Byte	2 Byte
4 Byte	-	2 Byte	Lower 2 Byte

For this task default setting is shown under 'Register operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. User can select number type - unsigned int, Signed, Hexadecimal, BCD and Binary.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

# • Add Tag B To Tag A

This tag is used for addition of two PLC Tags . The result will be stored in tag A.



E.g..- TagA = TagA + TagB

This task is applicable for register type tags only.

For successful operation both tag must be of same attributes like data type (unsigned int, signed int, Hex etc.) and size (1 byte, 2 byte, 4 byte etc.)

# Subtract Tag B from Tag A

This task is used for subtracting two PLC tags. The result will be stored in tag A.

Tag Operations			
Tag A D0000 (D0)			<u>0</u> k
Tag B D0001 (D1)		•	Cancel
Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	
🔿 Tag = Number	C On	C Copy Tag B To Tag A	Help
C Tag + Number	C Off	🔘 Swap Tag A and Tag B	
C Tag · Number	C Hold On	C Copy Tag to STR	
C Tag A = Tag A + Tag B	B C Hold Off	C Copy Tag to LED	
Tag A = Tag A - Tag B	C Toggle		

E.g..- TagA = TagA - TagB

This task is executed with selected register type tags only.

For successful operation both tag must be of same data type (unsigned int, signed int, Hex etc.) and size (1 byte, 2 byte, 4 byte etc.)

# • Turn bit On

This task is used for switching PLC coil or register bit to on state. The bit/coil should be a read-write coil.



This task is executed on coil or bit-addressed register only. User can select coil or bit-addressed register from tag list. By using this task user can set bit/coil to 1.

For this task default setting is shown under 'Bit operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

## • Turn bit Off

This task is used for switching Plc coil or register bit to off state. The bit/coil should be a read-write coil.

Tag Operations			Ŀ
Tag s0000 (Carry bit )		•	<u>0</u> k
Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	<u>C</u> ance
C Tag = Number C Tag + Number	C On € Off	C Copy Tag B To Tag A Swap Tag A and Tag B	<u>H</u> elp
C Tag · Number	C Hold On	C Copy Tag to STR	
C Tag A = Tag A + Tag B	C Hold Off	C Copy Tag to LED	
C TagA = TagA - TagB	C Toggle		

This task is executed on coil or bit-addressed register only. User can select coil or bit-addressed register from tag list. By using this task user can set bit/coil to 0.

For this task default setting is shown under 'Bit operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

# • Toggle bit

This task is used for toggling state of PLC coil or register bit. The bit/coil should be a read-write coil.

Tag Operations			D
Tag s0000 (Carry bit )			<u>0</u> k
Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	<u>C</u> ancel
C Tag = Number C Tag + Number	C On C Off	C Copy Tag B To Tag A C Swap Tag A and Tag B	Help
C Tag - Number	C Hold On	C Copy Tag to STR	
C Tag A = Tag A + Tag B	C Hold Off	C Copy Tag to LED	
C Tag A = Tag A · Tag B	🖲 Toggle		

This task is executed on coil or bit-addressed register only. User can select coil or bit-addressed register from tag list. When this task is executed, the bit/coil is set to 1 if it was 0 previously and vice-versa.

For this task default setting is shown under 'Bit operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

# • Copy Tag B to Tag A

This task is used for copying value of one PLC tag to Other PLC tag. The value of tag B will be unchanged. Tag A will be same as tag B.



#### E.g..- Tag A = Tag B

This task is executed on register tags and coil or bit-addressed register listed under Tag option. Both tag type must be of same type; either register type or coil/bit type. If the selected tags are of register type than this command is executed depending on the tag length (i.e. 1 byte, 2 byte, 4 byte).

For this task default setting is shown under 'Common operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

## Swap Tag A and Tag B

This task is used for swapping the values of two PLC tags. Tag A value will be copied to tag B and tag B value will be copied to tag A.



This task is executed on register tags and coil or bit-addressed register listed under Tag option. Both tag type must be of same type; either register type or coil/bit type. If the selected tags are of register type than this command is executed depending on the tag length (i.e. 1 byte, 2 byte, 4 byte). User can interchange values of Tag A and Tag B by using this command.

For this task default setting is shown under 'Common operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

# Copy Tag to STR

This is a very important task which allows user to copy the value of selected PLC Tag to STR i.e. Screen Trigger register. Screen Trigger Register is a system register inside HIMOS which decides the screen to be displayed. PLC tag can be copied to STR.

Tag Operations			×
Tag (D0000 (D0)			<u>0</u> k
Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	<u>C</u> ancel
C Tag = Number C Tag + Number	C On C Off	C Copy Tag B To Tag A Swap Tag A and Tag B	Help
C Tag · Number	C Hold On	Copy Tag to STR	
C TagA = TagA + TagB C TagA = TagA · TagB	C Toggle		

E.g..- STR (Screen Triggering Register) = Tag A

This task is executed on register tags listed under Tag option. Two byte tag value are transferred to STR. This task is used to jump to the screen number specified by value of STR.

For this task default setting is shown under 'Common operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed. Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

## • Copy tag to LED

LED's on the keypad of HIMOS can be turned on/off depending on the value of a tag. The tag should be copied to LED register and the LEDs will display the tag value.

#### Note : This task is supported only for Keypad based products.

Depending upon the number of LEDs, the 0<sup>th</sup> bit of the tag gets copied into the LED representing the first function key (F1). The first bit of tag gets copied into the LED representing the second function key (F2) and so on.

Tag Operations			
Tag S0001 (Language)	-		<u>0</u> k
Register operations	Bit operations	Common operations	<u>C</u> ancel
C Tag = Number C Tag + Number	C On C Off	C Copy Tag B To Tag A C Swap Tag A and Tag B	Help
C Tag - Number	C Hold On	C Copy Tag to STR	
C Tag A = Tag A + Tag B	C Hold Off	Copy Tag to LED	
C Tag A = Tag A - Tag B	C Toggle		

E.g..- LED = Tag A

LED is a internal unit register mapped to LED's displayed on unit. This task is executed on register tags listed under Tag option. Two byte tag value are transferred to LED register.

For this task default setting is shown under 'Common operations'. If user change this selection, task will be changed.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

following example of HI30X model will clear the idea


## • Delay

Any task can be delayed using this task. Tags will be updated during this delay. After the delay is completed the next task will be performed.



This task is supported for screen 'While showing' only. User can specify delay from 1 sec to max 3600 sec. **Note:** More than 1 delay task is not supported.

#### • Wait

This is a conditional delay. Next task will not be performed till the specified condition is false. Execution remains in wait state till wait condition is true. Task following wait task is executed only after wait condition is false. Operand could be either number between 0 to 65535 or PLC tag.

1	Wait till			X
	Iag D0000(D0)	<u>O</u> peration <= ▼	Operand	
				<u>Ok</u> <u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp

This task is supported only in 'While showing' Tasks of the Screen Task-list. Tasks defined after this task are not executed until the condition specified is true.

Here Tag is compared with the Operand. Operand can be a Number (0-65535) or Tag. Operation can be =, !=, <, <=, >, >=.

If Tag to be compared is bit/coil type then it is compared with On/Off state.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

## • Set RTC

User can edit RTC (Real Time Clock) registers of the HIMOS unit. This task increments selected RTC register at a time for one instance. User edit Year / Month / Date / Hour / Minutes / Seconds / Day of the week. User must place a Time / Date object on the screen for editing the RTC. This task is supported in key tasks only.

ncrement	Decrement
C Year	C Year
Month	C Month
C Date	C <u>D</u> ate
C Hour	C Hour
C Minute	C Mi <u>n</u> ute
C Second	C Second
C Day of Week	C Day of Week

By using this task, user can set time and date for Real Time Clock (RTC). This can be done by incrementing or decrementing Year, Month, Date, Hour, Minute, Second or Day of Week. Increment / decrement is done by 1. From these references, RTC counts all parameters with leap year compensation.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

## • Print Data

This task is supported in key tasks only. Alphanumeric data displayed on current screen can be printed using this task. User has to define the port as 'Serial printer' for executing this task. Any of the two ports can be configured for printing and printing will be done from the port which is configured for printing as mentioned above.

## • Copy HIMOS Block to HIMOS/PLC Block

This task is executed on register tags only. This task is used to copy unit tags to PLC tags. This is two byte copy command. Unit block means any unit tags or retentive memory area.

block		
•	Block <sup>3</sup>	Size (Max 999)
	block	block Block 10 T

For e.g..- As shown above, 10 sequential unit tags starting from D0000 (i.e. D0000 to D0009) will be copied to 10 sequential PLC tags starting from IR00000 (i.e. IR00000 to IR00009).

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

## • Copy PLC Block to HIMOS Block

This task is executed on register tags only. This task is used to copy PLC tags to unit tags. This is two byte copy command. Unit block means any unit tags or retentive memory area.

0			Block	Size
	20000 ( d5 )	-	10	(Max 999)
(HIMUS)				
Tag B	R00000 ( Dummy )	•		
HIMOS/PLC '				

For e.g.- As shown above, 10 sequential PLC tags starting from IR00000 (i.e. IR00000 to IR00009) will be copied to 10 sequential unit tags starting from D0000 (i.e. D0000 to D0009).

To prevent number of write cycles to EEPROM (retentive memory area), this command is not supported in Global\_tasklist and While showing task-list, if retentive register is selected as unit tag. Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

## • Copy RTC to PLC Block

Dummy)	•
Second	ls ( 0 to 600 )
OK	Cancel Help
	Dummy) Second

This task is supported only in Global task-list. This task copies sequentially 7 RTC parameters from selected tag after every specified RTC Download Time. If this time is specified as 0 seconds then it means this task will be executed as per Global task-list execution time.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

7 RTC parameters are copied in the PLC Tags starting from the First PLC Tag (IR00000 as shown above) following sequence-

1st Tag - Hours 2nd Tag - Minutes 3rd Tag - Seconds 4th Tag - Date 5th Tag - Month 6th Tag - Year 7th Tag - Day of week

## • Goto Popup Screen



This task is supported in touch screen products only. User can select screen number from available popup screen list.

Click 'OK' to add task in task list.

When this task is executed selected screen pops up on current screen. At a time only one screen can be popped up. By pressing right most corner 'X' close button you can close popup screen.

## Keys' Specific Tasks

This task enables user to define task which are specific for keys. This task is specially useful for editing data in the system or checking / acknowledging alarms. Following is the list of key's specific tasks:

KEYs' specific tasks			×
<ul> <li>Clear Data Entry</li> <li>Cancel Data Entry</li> <li>Accept Data Entry</li> <li>Switch to Next Data Entry</li> <li>Increase Value by 1</li> <li>Decrease Value by 1</li> <li>Increase Digit by 1</li> <li>Decrease Digit by 1</li> <li>Shift Value to Left</li> <li>Move Cursor to Left</li> <li>Move Cursor to Right</li> <li>Sign Key (+/-)</li> <li>Sign Key (+/-) and 0</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Numeric Key 0</li> <li>Numeric Key 1</li> <li>Numeric Key 2</li> <li>Numeric Key 3</li> <li>Numeric Key 4</li> <li>Numeric Key 5</li> <li>Numeric Key 6</li> <li>Numeric Key 7</li> <li>Numeric Key 8</li> <li>Numeric Key 9</li> <li>Edit Bit On</li> <li>Edit Bit Off</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Numeric Key A</li> <li>Numeric Key B</li> <li>Numeric Key C</li> <li>Numeric Key D</li> <li>Numeric Key E</li> <li>Numeric Key F</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Acknowledge Alarm</li> <li>Acknowledge All Alarms</li> <li>Previous Alarm</li> <li>Next Alarm</li> <li>Previous Historical Alarm</li> <li>Next Historical Alarm</li> <li>Next Historical Alarm</li> <li>Refresh all Trends</li> <li>Start Logger for all groups</li> <li>Stop Logger for all groups</li> <li>Start Logger of group</li> <li>Stop Logger of group</li> <li>[1-4]</li> <li>Stop Logger of group</li> <li>[1-4]</li> <li>Clear Log Memory</li> <li>Clear Historical Alarm Memory</li> </ul>

## Task Management

No.	Tasks	Description
1	Clear Data Entry	Clears active data entry value to 0.
2	Cancel Data Entry	Disables data entry
3	Accept Data Entry	Accepts edited data for current data entry and cursor jumps to next data entry object.
4	Switch To Next Data Entry	Disables previous data entry and switches to next data entry.
5	Increase Value by 1	Adds 1 to Tag value in data entry object.
6	Decrease Value by 1	Subtracts 1 from Tag value in data entry object.
7	Increase Digit by 1	This task is executed only on single digit shown by cursor. The digit scrolls between 0 to 9.
8	Decrease Digit by 1	This task is executed only on single digit shown by cursor. The digit scrolls between 0 to 9.
9	Shift Value to Left	Shifts value to left by padding zeros from right side.
10	Move Cursor to Left	Moves the cursor to the left. This task is not scrolling type so cursor moves upto number of digits in the data entry object.
11 upto	Move Cursor to Right	Moves the cursor to the right. This task is not scrolling type so cursor moves number of digits in the data entry object.
12	Sign Key (+/-)	This task operates only on Signed data. On each event sign toggles between + and
13 it	Sign Key (+/- and 0)	For the first iteration this task acts as Sign Key. Then for each of the iterations, acts as Numeric key 0.
14	Numeric Key 0	Allows user to enter '0' at cursor location, if selected tag is Register type. For Coil / Bit type, this task acts as 'Edit Bit Off'.
15	Numeric Key 1	Allows user to enter '1' at cursor location, if selected tag is Register type. For Coil / Bit type, this task acts as 'Edit Bit On'.
16	Numeric Key 2	Allows user to enter '2' at cursor location.
17	Numeric Key 3	Allows user to enter '3' at cursor location.
18	Numeric Key 4	Allows user to enter '4' at cursor location.
19	Numeric Key 5	Allows user to enter '5' at cursor location.
20	Numeric Key 6	Allows user to enter '6' at cursor location.
21	Numeric Key 7	Allows user to enter '7' at cursor location.
22	Numeric Key 8	Allows user to enter '8' at cursor location.
23	Numeric Key 9	Allows user to enter '9' at cursor location.
24	Numeric Key A	Allows user to enter 'A' at cursor location.
25	Numeric Key B	Allows user to enter 'B' at cursor location.
26	Numeric Key C	Allows user to enter 'C' at cursor location.

## Task Management

No.	Tasks	Description
27	Numeric Key D	Allows user to enter 'D' at cursor location.
28	Numeric Key E	Allows user to enter 'E' at cursor location.
29	Numeric Key F	Allows user to enter 'F' at cursor location.
		Note: Numeric keys A to F are applicable for HEX data entry only.
30	Edit Bit On	This task operates only on coil / bit tags. Coil / bit is set to 1 from this task.
31	Edit Bit Off	This task operates only on coil / bit tags. Coil / bit is set to 0 from this task.
32	Acknowledge Alarm	Acknowledges the first alarm (top position in the Real time alarm window)
33	Acknowledge All Alarms	Unlike Acknowledge Alarm task, this task acknowledges all alarms.
34	Previous Alarm	The alarm display position in the Real time alarm container is shifted one position up.
35	Next Alarm	The alarm display position in the Real time alarm container is shifted one position down.
36	Previous Historical Alarm	The alarm display position in the Historical alarm container is shifted one position up.
37	Next Historical Alarm	The alarm display position in the Historical time alarm container is shifted one position up.
38	Refresh All Trend	Clears all the historical alarms.
39	Start Data Logger for all groups	Starts the data logger for all the four groups.
40	Stop Data Logger for all groups	Stops the data logger for all the four groups.
41	Start Logger for groups	Starts the data logger for the specific groups (in the range of 1 to 4 groups).
42	Stop Logger for groups	Stops the data logger for the specific groups (in the range of 1 to 4 groups).
43	Clear Log Memory	Clears Data Logger Memory
44	Clear Historical Alarm Memory	Clears all the displayed historical alarms from memory.

Note: Task 1 to Task 31 operates only for data entry object.

• Execute PLC Logic Block

PLC Block		
Block Name	Block Description	
Running Timer	BlockComment BlockComment	
	Edit Block	New Block
		OK Cancel Help

This task is used for ladder logic block execution. New block allows to create new Logic block where as Edit block allows to edit existing Logic block. Click on help button to get more about ladder logic block creation and compilation.

Clicking on Edit Block opens Ladder window as below.

📰 EDIT L	OGIC BLOC	К								
<u>B</u> lock <u>E</u> dit	t <u>V</u> iew <u>⊂</u> orr	nments <u>S</u> ea	rch <u>H</u> elp							
	6		Å	Ð		٢	- <b>T</b> T	?		
Ş	F2-	F3-11-	F4	F5	F11-1↑⊢	F12⊣↓⊢	F6-{ }-	F7 CNT	F9 <=>	F8 +
<b>₽</b> ₄–[S]–	<b>₽</b> =-[R]		₽ <sub>7</sub> ROTATE	₽ <mark>8</mark> LOG	nJmmediate F9 I-O	₽11SKIP	₽ <sub>12</sub> TIMER	Data F₂ Conv.	♣ Float Math	Fic Fr Corr
1	B0000	10	10			Ċ		80 MOV-V	7 D0000-	
	B0000	it.	22	15 1	5 <i>2</i>	16		6		
2	//	(K)	8	6	6 B.	24	(K00)	20 MOV-6		• •
3 -									[END]	-
4	94 2	1	-4	23	8 Q		20	28	9. 12.	
	20	æ	22	10	a 10	22	23	<i>5</i> 8	2	
5 -										
6 -	13	<i>i</i>	*	15 1		25		10		
Valid range:	:- (B:0-4999) (	X:0-99) (Y:0	-99) (s:0-99)	8					NUM	

Note that since ladder compilation is not supported for Windows 95/98, this task can not be used under Windows 95/98/Me.

## USING LANGUAGES

In this chapter. . . .

- Language Conversion Utility
- ♦ Language Wizard

## 7.1 Language Conversion Utility

The purpose of the Language Conversion Utility is to be able to define text objects in language(s) other than the default language, which is English. To understand the concept, consider following example. Suppose a project is created for 2 languages, English and Russian. While creating the project, the text objects are defined only in English since the person who created the project does not know Russian. The first step in the language translation project is to export all of the text objects using the export function in the HIMOSOFT. The next step is to send the exported file and the Language Conversion Utility to someone who will translate the English text objects into Russian. The last step is to import the text objects in the translated project. All of the text objects can now be viewed in Russian as well as English. This utility reads the file exported by the application software and displays the text objects in a grid. Text data for all languages defined by the Unit Settings are loaded. Except for English, the data for any other language can be edited within the grid. When a text object is edited, the appropriate language keyboard is activated.

## Language Conversion Utility – GUI

## 7.1.1 File Menu

A user can open a *.out* file that has been created by the import utility from the menu bar. Be sure to use the right path of the *.out* file. The error message will be displayed for unrecognized *.out* files.

#### 1. Open Option in Menu bar



Click this menu option or Ctrl+O to open a *.out* file. A standard file open dialog box will appear. The valid file extension is *.out*. The *.out* files should be created by using the Export menu option in the HIMOSOFT. Select a file and click Open button, or alternatively double-click on the file name. If the file is valid, the data in the file is displayed in the grid format. The grid has a minimum of 3 fixed columns:

- 1. **Serial No** : Displays the running serial number.
- 2. Screen Object : Displays the screen number and object type information.
- 3. **English** : The English text associated with the object.

Additional columns will be displayed for each language configured in the project. Select a grid cell and click on it to change the data. Depending on the language of the column, the appropriate keyboard layout will be loaded.

#### 2. 'Close' option in menu bar

A user can close the *.out* file from the menu bar.



Click this menu option to close the currently open file. The user is prompted to save the file, if it has been modified since the last save operation.

#### 3. "Save" option in menu bar

A user can save the *.out* file from the menu bar.



Click this menu option to save the currently open file. This menu is enabled only when the file has been modified.

#### 4. "Save As" option in menu bar

File	Define	Communicate		
New				
Open				
Close		Ctrl+F4		
Save		F2		
Save as				
Ir	nformatio	n		
Ir	nport			
E	xport			
Ρ	rint			
E	xit	Alt+F4		

Click this menu option to save the current file as another file.

5. Recent File:



**Recent File** 

The recent file list contains the last 4 most recently used files.

## 6. "Exit" option in menu bar

File	Define	Communicate
N	ew	
0	pen	
C	lose	Ctrl+F4
s	ave	F2
S	ave as	
Ir	nformatio	n
Ir	nport	
E	xport	
PI	rint	
E	xit	Alt+F4
-		
	Evit Or	tion

Click this menu option to exit the utility.

## 7.1.2 Edit Menu

Cut : Click this menu option or Ctrl+X, to cut a selected cell's data and copy it to the clipboard.
 Copy : Click this menu option or Ctrl+C, to copy a selected cell's data to the clipboard.
 Paste : Click this menu option or Ctrl+V, to paste the previously copied data to the selected cell.

## 7.1.3 View Menu

**Toolbar :** Click this menu option to toggle the toolbar. **Status Bar :** Click this menu option to toggle the status bar.

## 7.1.4 Help Menu

This menu option opens the About dialog box. It will display the DITEL logo, software version number, software version date information.

## 7.2 Multi-Language Text Wizard

The Multi-Language Text Wizard allows the designer to configure text objects for use in a multiple language project.

Text Wizard	X
Text Properties Preview Sample Text	Simulate Language English (United States)
Enter Text	Text Properties         Text Color       ■         Border       ✓         Border       ✓         Font       Font         Language       English (United States)
	OK Cancel <u>Apply</u>

#### **Text properties**

- 1. **Text :** The object can have a maximum of 150 characters.
- 2. **Text color :** Sets the text color from the palette.
- 3. **Background:** Sets the Background text color from the palette.
- 4. **Border :** If enabled, the text object will have a border.
- 5. Border Color : Sets the color of the border from the palette.
- 6. Font: Selects Windows® Font, Font Style and Font size.
- 7. Language : Displays the list of languages configured in the Unit Settings.

#### Simulate

A user can preview the text configured for each language configured in the wizard in the preview window.

## 7.2.1 Configure Languages

HIMOS products can be configured for a maximum of 9 different languages. All of the programming wizards support multiple languages. To enable multilanguage support, the user has to add the languages he wants to use in the application here.

istalled Languages :		Selected Languages: (max 9)
English (United States) Chinese (PRC) Japanese		English (United States) Chinese (PRC) Japanese
Korean Russian		Korean
	Remove	

The list box on the left side shows which languages are installed on your computer. The list box on the right side lists the languages to be used in the project. The languages must be installed on your computer to appear in the installed languages list. Languages can be installed on a computer by using the Windows task "Add other languages". This task is located in the Regional and Language Options selection of the Control Panel menu as shown on the following page.

## Language Wizard





Language installation uses the following screen.

English (United States) - US Catalan - Italian Dutch (Netherlands) - United States-International English (United States) - US Spanish (Mexico) - Latin American Spanish (Mexico) - Portuguese Spanish (Mexico) - Russian M English (United States) Keyboard - US ES Spanish (Mexico) Keyboard - US ES Spanish (Mexico) Add	ttings Advanced Default input Janguage Select one of the installed input languages to computer.	o use when you start your
Latin American     Portuguese	English (United States) - US Catalan - Italian Dutch (Netherlands) - United States-Internal English (United States) - US Spanish (Mexico) - Latin American Spanish (Mexico) - Portuguese Spanish (Mexico) - Russian EN English (United States) Keyboard - US ES Spanish (Mexico) Keyboard - Latin American - Portuguese	ional

Note: Parameters not supported for the product are grayed out.

## 7.2.2 Displaying Multiple Languages in Unit

System Register S0001 controls the language to be displayed at run time. User can use 'Write value to tag' task for changing value in system register.

Note : If S0001 has value other than 1 to 9 then English language is displayed.

#### Example:

If user has configured project for 3 different languages namely English, Korean, Japanese then following tasks can be used to change language at run time.

English - Write value to Tag S0001 with value 1

Korean - Write value to Tag S0001 with value 2

Japanese - Write value to Tag S0001 with value 3

In this way 9 different languages can be displayed in unit at run time.

## DOWNLOADING AND UPLOADING FROM UNIT

In this chapter. . . .

- Upload an Application
- Download an Application
- Error Catalog

## 8.1 Upload

An application can be uploaded from the HIMOS unit. To upload an application first select the appropriate communication port for your computer by choosing "**Communicate | Communication Port**" menu option. Attach a computer to HIMOS cable. From the "**Communicate**" menu, click on the "**Upload...**" selection.

<u>OR</u>	Communicate	Utilities	Screer
	Communicat	ion Port	
	Download		
	Upload		
	Ethernet Se	ttings	
	Communicat	ion Mode	

In the Upload dialog, check the "**Application**" radio button and press the "**Upload**" button to begin uploading the application .

Uploading from unit to Compute	<b>r</b>	
Communication Port COM1	Upload	Application
		Application Application + Logged data
Press 'Upload' to close the cu Otherw	urrent application and upload from rise Press 'Close'. Uplo	n unit. ad <u>C</u> lose <u>H</u> elp

The application and the application plus logged data uploads can be performed.

## 1. Application

If this option is selected, only the application will be uploaded from the unit.

Note that tag and screen names can be uploaded only if the "Download tag names" option in Unit Settings was originally selected. If this option was not selected, then the tag names and screen names are uploaded with default names such as Tag1, Tag2 and Tag3. If the application used ladder logic block tasks, they cannot be uploaded. Ladder block information would only be available from the original application file.

## 2. Application + Logged data

This option applies only to units that support data logging.

This option is selected if user wants to upload application and logger data. The application is uploaded first and then the logger data.

The logged data is displayed in a csv format. The data can be viewed by selecting the "**Display Logged Data**" menu option located under "**Utilities**" as shown below.

Utilities	Screen	Objects	Tools
On Li	On Line Ladder Monitor		
On Line Screen Monitor			
Displa	Display Logged Data		
Font Editor			
Image Conversion to bmp			o
Prizm	Memory :	Status	
Clear Picture Library			
Conv	ert Applic	ation	

Check the unit and cable connections before starting the upload.

Communication Port – The user has to define which communication port to use for uploading / downloading.

COM Port	
Select Port	
Сом1	▼ OK

The following errors may occur during uploading:

## 1 Unit is not responding

This error indicates that no communication has been established between the computer and the HIMOS unit. Check the COM port selection and cable connections.

## 2 Unit is not responding after frame number XXXX

Communication with unit has been lost. Try uploading again. You may need to close the HIMOS program and restart it.

## 8.2 Download

To download an application into the HIMOS unit, either click on "**Download**" button from the Toolstation or choose "**Communicate | Download**" menu option and a DOS window will appear for a moment. It is linking the PLC drivers with firmware for the application.



#### After linking, the following window will display -

Downloading from Computer to unit	
Communication Port COM1	Download Options
Downloading application	Abort
	<u>Close</u> <u>H</u> elp

**Communication Port** – Used to select which communication port to use for downloading. By default Com1 is selected. Any changes are stored with the HIMOS program.

## **Download Options**

#### 1. Application

Select this option to download the application to the unit.

#### 2. Firmware

Firmware needs to be downloaded when:

- 1. Before downloading the application for the first time.
- 2. If a new PLC node is either added or deleted in the Network configuration.
- 3. Upgrading firmware in the unit to newer version.
- 4. Before downloading applications created in older versions of software.

## 3. Font

Select this option to download fonts to unit. This option needs to be selected if the default fonts have been modified.

#### 4. Ladder

Select this option to download ladder blocks to the unit. This option needs to be selected if the ladder logic blocks have been modified.

Download Button - Click this button to start the downloading.

Abort Button - Click on this button to stop the downloading.

## 8.3 Error Catalog

#### 1. HIMOS is not responding.

This is a communications error. Check the cable, connection, and display type compatibility.

#### 2. Selected HIMOS model does not match the unit connected on the IBM port.

This is product mismatch error. Check that you have defined the correct HIMOS model in the HIMOS application and retry.

#### 3. No driver found for selected HIMOS model.

This error is displayed during firmware download if the driver for the selected PLC node in HIMOS application was not found. Check whether you have defined correct HIMOS model and PLC node in your application. If these are correct the error is still displayed, contact your supplier or DITEL for support.

# 4. Number of Blocks used in screen number XXXX has exceeded the maximum limit of 256 words. Delete or change some of the entities to avoid overflow.

The number of blocks embedded per screen is limited. If this number is exceeded, the above error is generated. To avoid this, delete or change some of the tags on the screen, so that the number of words on the screen will be within the maximum limit.



#### 5. Can not download application.

If this error message occurs, the application cannot be downloaded. To make the application downloadable, delete or change some of the tags on screen, so that the number of words on screen will be within the maximum limit.



## 6. The Firmware size has exceeded the limit.

The Firmware size has exceeded the limit. It can be reduced by -

- 1. Reducing the number of channels configured in 16-point Linearization.
- 2. Reducing the number of blocks configured in PID or Time Proportional PWM.
- 3. Reducing the number of channels configured as High Speed Interrupt or Pulse Output.



## <u>ALARMS</u>

In this chapter. . . .

- Defining Alarms
- Using the Alarm Window
- Difference between Real Time & Historical Alarms

## 9.1 Define Alarm

Alarm will be displayed in the alarm window only if it is defined from the 'Define Alarm' menu.

There are two categories of alarm

- 1. Real time alarms: Stored & displayed as long as unit power is ON.
- 2. Historical alarms: Stores alarms in memory with battery back up.

Note: Historical alarms are only supported for the units with RTC / Battery backup.

In case of historical alarms the alarms defined with "Historical attribute" are logged till the unit is ON. Then even though you turn the unit OFF & then back ON after few days you can still view the alarms that were present when the unit was ON earlier.

The alarm object displays the alarm text when the alarm occurs. First triggered alarm is on top. Alarm condition for alarm should be cleared. Each alarm has to be acknowledged. 'Acknowledge Alarm' key acknowledges the alarm. The alarm text is cleared when the alarm condition is cleared and the alarm is acknowledged. Alarm text for unacknowledged or uncleared alarm will not be cleared. Any tag can be continuously monitored by defining alarms for each bit of that tag. To display an alarm on the screen as soon as it is triggered, alarm object has to be placed on the screen. An alarm is triggered for each bit in a tag. If the value of the particular tag becomes nonzero, corresponding alarm is displayed in the alarm object.

An alarm is a bit in a particular 2-byte tag. This two-byte tag is defined as a particular group in the alarm definition table. Since a two-byte tag contains 16 bits one such tag can generate 16 alarms. So to define 64 alarms we need to create 4 groups with 4 different two byte tags & define one alarm per bit in that. In total you can define up to 256 real time & 30 historical alarms.

## 9.1.1 Alarm Definition

Alarms can be defined in the following screen

Alarms			
			<u>O</u> k
Number	History	Alarm Text	<u>C</u> ancel
001	Y N Y	Alarm 1 Alarm 2 Alarm 3	Help
			×
			Delete
			New
<u>G</u> roups	of Alarms	01 [ 000 - 015 ]   Iag of group S0002 ( Logger memory status )	
Alarm <u>N</u>	lumber	002 [ 000 - 015 ]	Accept
Alarm T	e <u>x</u> t	Alarm 3	Discoul
		History       History with Acknowledge         History with out Acknowledge	

## Alarms

1. Group of alarms :	Each tag must be associated with a unique group of alarms. There can be 16 different groups of alarms.
2. Tag of group :	A two byte tag for the defined alarm group
3. Alarm number :	The unique number of the alarm. It corresponds to the bit position bit in the defined alarm tag.
4. Alarm text :	The text that is displayed in the alarm window when the alarm is active.
5. History :	If this option is selected, the alarm is logged in historical alarm memory when the alarm is active.
6. Add button :	Allows a new alarm to be defined in the alarm definition window.
7. Delete button :	Deletes a selected alarm from the table.
8. Accept button :	Saves any changes made to the attributes of an alarm.
9. Discard button :	Cancels any changes made to the attributes of an alarm.

## 9.1.2 Alarm Object

The alarm window object displays real time or historical alarms in a user-defined format.

Alarm Window Option	s	
Select <u>F</u> rom On Date Off Date	Add Dejete Up	Selected Number Alarm Text OnTime OffTime Active Acknowledged
Format       Length     10       Active     C Y / 1       Acknowledged     C Y / 1       Erint     C Y / 1	N CYes/No N CYes/No N CYes/No	Alarm type Real Time Historical
		<u>Cancel H</u> elp

#### Select From

This list contains the available columns that can be viewed in an alarm display The attributes can be

1. Alarm Text	:	Text defined for the alarm.
2. Number	:	Number defined for the alarm.
3. Active	:	The present status of the alarm [Active/inactive].
4. Acknowledge	e :	The status of the acknowledge attribute for the alarm.
5. On time	:	The time at which the alarm made the transition from an OFF to an ON state.
6. Off time	:	The time at which the alarm made transition from an ON to an OFF state.
7. On date	:	The date at which the alarm made transition from an OFF to an ON state.
8. Off date	:	The date at which the alarm made transition from an ON to an OFF state.

Note: The active and acknowledge attributes are not applicable for historical alarms.

#### Selected

This list gives the attributes that are selected and will appear in an alarm display. To deselect the unwanted attribute(s), highlight them and choose Delete button.

## Alarms

## Alarm type

This is the selection, which specifies whether the current alarm window represents the real time or historical alarms.

Note: Historical alarms are Product dependent.

### Format

Enter the format for the highlighted attribute from Selected field.

For Time attribute, you can select the format as either HH:MM:SS or MM:SS from the combo box.

For Alarm Text attribute, you can enter the length in 'Length' field.

For Active and Acknowledged attributes, you can check the desired radio button.

## TRENDING

In this chapter. . . .

- Real Time Trend
- Data Logging
- Historical Trend

## 10.1 Real Time Trend

The Real Time Trend object is a graphical representation of a tag's value in the current time period. The time value comes from the real time clock in the HIMOS unit. The tag's value is plotted on the Y axis and updated every second.

Preview				
100 80 40 20 0			Simulate Language	e English (United States)
rend Propertie No of 1 tags 1 Time 60	s T Seconds	✓ Show Grids ✓ Span time Tag S0001 (Language)	Label Label Label Language Text	English (United States)
Fill Color Error Mess Font 5x7	] +  age	Grid Color	Data Type	Font Color

## **Trend Properties**

- 1. No. Of Tags : Up to four tags may be monitored.
- 2. Show Grid : If enabled, grid lines will be shown on the trend display.
- 3. **Span Time** : The value, in seconds, for the X axis interval. The maximum value for the span time is 65535 seconds.
- 4. **Span Time Tag** : If enabled, a 2 byte tag will determine the span time.
- 5. **Fill Color** : The background color of the trend object.
- 6. **Grid Color** : The color of the grids, if enabled, on the trend object.

#### **Error Message**

Many of the trend object's properties can be determined at run time through the use a tag. If the value of the tag is out of the proper range for the property, an error message will be displayed. The text display properties can be modified.

1. Font :	Font of the error message to be displayed. Select a Windows® Font, Font Style and Font size.
2. Text Color :	Color of the error message to be displayed.

## Label

If the Label is enable, the following parameters be configured.

- 1. Text : Label text.
- 2. Font : Select a Windows® Font, Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Chooses which language the text is being defined for.
- 4. **Color** : Color of the text.

#### Data Type

The following data types can be used in the trend object.

- 1. Unsigned integer
- 2. Signed integer
- 3. Hexadecimal
- 4. BCD
- 5. Float

#### **Value Scale Properties**

The value scale defines the scaling properties of the Y axis of the trend object.

Trend Trend : Properties Preview	Value scale properties	Time scale properties   Tag1
0 23 100	Trend	Simulate English (United States)
Grid Properties	2 [1 to 10]	Limits          Units       Minimum       0       [0 to 65535]       Tag       \$0001 (Language)          Maximum       100       [0 to 65535]       Tag       \$0001 (Language)          Text color

## **Grid Properties**

No of Grids : If enabled, select the number of grid lines to be shown on the Y axis. Up to 10 grids can be shown.

Limits

If the Units Selection is enabled, the limits are shown on the trend object along the value scale axis.

- 1. Minimum :
- 2. Minimum tag :
- The smallest displayed value on the Y axis. The range is from 0 to 65535. If enabled, the minimum is determined by a tag instead of a constant.
- 3. Maximum : Th
  - The highest displayed value on the Y axis. The range is from 0 to 65535
- 4. Maximum tag :
  - tag: If enabled, the maximum is determined by a tag instead of a constant.
- 5. **Text Color** : The color of the values on the Y scale.

## **Time Scale Properties**



## **Grid Properties**

No of Grids : If enabled, select the number of grid lines to be shown on the X axis. Up to 10 grids can be shown.

## Text properties

- 1. Scale : If enabled, the real time grid values are shown along the time scale axis.
- 2. **Format** : Scale formatting can be either HH:MM:SS or HH:MM.
- 3. **Color** : Determines the preferred color of the X axis scale information.

## **Specific Tag Information**

Tag Tag S0001 (Language)	Simulate English (United States)
--------------------------------	-------------------------------------

1. **Tag** : 2. **Color** : Defines a 2 byte tag to be used for the trend information to be plotted. Defines the color for the trend information to be plotted.

## 10.2 Data Logger

The Data Logger can be used to record the values of tags over time. The data can be viewed using the Historical Trend Object. It can also be uploaded to a computer for analysis. This feature is available only for HI57X and HI120X models.

The Data Logger can be opened from either by choosing **Define | Data Logger** menu option or from the Project tool bar as shown below.

Define	Communicate	Utilities	Screen	Objects
Unit	Settings			F3
Netv	vork Configurati	on		F4
Tag	database			F5
Scre	ens			F6
Appl	ication Keys			F7
Alarr	ns			F8
Appli	ication Tasklists	ĥá		F9
Ladd	ler Logic Block	ļ.		F10
High	speed interrupt	5		F11
High	speed Timer			
Data	Logger	>		
Conf	igure PID Block.			
16-P	oint Linearizatio	n		
Time	Proportional PV	VM Config	uration	
Pulse	e Output			
Anal	og Configuratio	ñ		
Anal	og Totalizer			
Hide	Project Tools			F12

Рго	ject	tools								X
1	Ē				¢,	G		<u>112181</u>	X	
<b>P</b>		2	ллл	474	1/0	$\mathbf{A}$ +	4	Pi'	<b>1</b>	₽٩

Data Logger

Data Logger General Group 1 No Of Groups: 1 -After memory is full Logger memory size Stop logging 256 KB -FIFO (Overwrite old data) 256 KB 512 KB 1024 KB 2048 KB OK Cancel

The Data Logger window will display after clicking on Data logger option.

#### **Number of Groups**

Up to four groups of data to be logged may be defined.

#### After Memory is Full

- 1. **Stop Logging** : In this mode, data logging is stopped when the memory is full. No further data can be logged until the memory is cleared.
- 2. FIFO (Overwrite Old Data) : In this mode, old data will be overwritten by the new data when the memory is full.

#### Logger Memory Size

The amount of memory that will be dedicated to data logging is determined from the drop down list.

## Logging Modes

This box allows the user to select one of the following logging modes.

#### 1. Power Up Mode :

As soon as power is switched ON, data logging for the Data Logger Group will begin.

### 2. Start/Stop Time Mode :

In this mode, data logging occurs between the start and stop times. Times are in the HH:MM:SS format.

#### 3. Key Tasks :

In this mode, data logging can be started and stopped using a bit button having the proper Key's Specific Tasks.

eneral Group I Group 2 Group 3 Group 4	
	(0-255) (0-59) (0-59)
Logging mode Power up	Logat <u>e</u> very 0 0 10
(0.22) (0.59) (0.59)	⊡ ™I 38 (0.22) (0.50) (0.50)
Logger start time 0 0 0	
Hr Mi Ss	Hr Mi Ss
Defined tags          S0001 (Language)         S0002 (Logger memory status)         S0004 (Number of Historical Alarr         S0005 (Screen trigger register)         S0006 (Screen saver time)         S0010 (RTC Day)         S0011 (RTC Month)	Tags to be logged S0001 (Language) S0005 (Screen trigger register)

The time interval for data is set in the 'Log at Every' window. This window is applicable for all the modes. The default time is 10 seconds.

Logger's Start time and Logger's Stop time windows are available only for the Start/ Stop time mode.

For each group, define the tags that should be logged.

For Key Task mode logging, bit buttons should be created to handle various logging needs. The Key Specific Tasks should be assigned to the button's task list.

C Clear Data Entry       C Numeric Key 0       C Numeric Key A       C Acknowledge Alarm         C Cancel Data Entry       C Numeric Key 1       C Numeric Key B       C Acknowledge All Alarms         C Accept Data Entry       C Numeric Key 2       C Numeric Key C       C Previous Alarm         C Switch to Next Data Entry       C Numeric Key 3       C Numeric Key D       C Next Alarm         C Increase Value by 1       C Numeric Key 5       C Numeric Key F       C Next Historical Alarm         C Decrease Value by 1       C Numeric Key 5       C Numeric Key F       C Refresh all Trends	KEYs' specific tasks			
C Indiease Digit by 1       C Numeric Key 8         C Decrease Digit by 1       C Numeric Key 7         C Shift Value to Left       C Numeric Key 8         C Move Cursor to Left       C Numeric Key 9         C Move Cursor to Left       C Numeric Key 9         C Move Cursor to Right       C Stop Logger of group         C Sign Key (+/-)       C Edit Bit On         C Sign Key (+/-) and 0       C Edit Bit Off	<ul> <li>Clear Data Entry</li> <li>Cancel Data Entry</li> <li>Accept Data Entry</li> <li>Switch to Next Data Entry</li> <li>Switch to Next Data Entry</li> <li>Increase Value by 1</li> <li>Decrease Value by 1</li> <li>Increase Digit by 1</li> <li>Decrease Digit by 1</li> <li>Shift Value to Left</li> <li>Move Cursor to Left</li> <li>Move Cursor to Right</li> <li>Sign Key (+/-)</li> <li>Sign Key (+/-) and 0</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Numeric Key 0</li> <li>Numeric Key 1</li> <li>Numeric Key 2</li> <li>Numeric Key 3</li> <li>Numeric Key 4</li> <li>Numeric Key 5</li> <li>Numeric Key 6</li> <li>Numeric Key 7</li> <li>Numeric Key 8</li> <li>Numeric Key 9</li> <li>Edit Bit On</li> <li>Edit Bit Off</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Numeric Key A</li> <li>Numeric Key B</li> <li>Numeric Key C</li> <li>Numeric Key D</li> <li>Numeric Key E</li> <li>Numeric Key F</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Acknowledge Alarm</li> <li>Acknowledge All Alarms</li> <li>Previous Alarm</li> <li>Next Alarm</li> <li>Previous Historical Alarm</li> <li>Next Historical Alarm</li> <li>Next Historical Alarm</li> <li>Refresh all Trends</li> <li>Stop Logger for all groups</li> <li>Stop Logger of group</li> <li>Stop Logger of group</li> <li>Stop Logger of group</li> <li>(1 - 4)</li> <li>Clear Log Memory</li> <li>Clear Historical Alarm Memory</li> </ul>

#### 10.3 **Historical Trend**

Historical Trend can be enabled only if data logging is defined. You can select Historical Trend either by choosing **Objects | Wizards | Historical Trend** menu option or by clicking **Historical Trend** tool from Objects toolbox.

### **Historical Trend Properties**

istorical Trend : Properties   Value scale properties   Time sc Preview	cale properties Start / End Time Tags Tag1 Tag2
100     Historical Trend       80     60       60     60       40     60       20     HH: MI: SS       DD/MM/VY     DD/MM/VY	Simulate Language English (United States)
Trend Properties       No of 2     Image: Show Grids       Fill Color     Image: Show Grids       Error Message     Image: Show Grids	Label Label Language English (United States) Text Historical Trend Font Color

#### **Trend Properties**

- 1. No. Of Tags :
- 2. Show Grid :
- 3. Span Time :
- 4. Span time Tag :
- 5. Fill Color :
- Up to four tags may be monitored. If enabled, grid lines will be shown on the trend display.
- The value, in seconds, for the X axis interval.
- If enabled, a 2 byte tag will determine the span time.
  - The background color of the trend object.
- 6. Grid Color :
- The color of the grids, if enabled, on the trend object.

## Error Message

The trend object offers the unique feature of specifying parameter values during runtime using a tag. The trend object does the value validation check during runtime. If the values are invalid, an error message is shown in the message window.

1. Font : Font of the error message to be displayed. Select a Windows® Font , Font Style and Font size.

2. Text Color : Color of the error message to be displayed.

## Label

If the Label is enabled, the following parameters can be configured.

- 1. Text : Label text.
- 2. Font : Select a Windows® Font, Font Style and Font size.
- 3. Language : Chooses which language the text is being defined for.
- 4. **Color** : Color of the text.

## Data Type

The following data types can be used in the trend object.

- 1. Unsigned integer
- 2. Signed integer
- 3. Hexadecimal
- 4. BCD
- 5. Float

## Unavailable Data

This dialogue box allows user to select the color of the unavailable data message.
# Trending

### **Value Scale Properties**

Historical Trend Historical Trend : Properties Value scale	properties Time scale properties Start / End Time Tags Tag1 Tag2
100 Historical Trend 80 60 40 20 0 HH: MI: SS DD: MM/VV	Update
Grid Properties       No of Grids         [1 to 10]	Limits V Units Minimum 0 [0 to 65535] T Tag S0001 (Language) Maximum 100 [0 to 65535] T Tag S0001 (Language) Text color
	OK Cancel Apply

### **Grid Properties**

No of Grids : If enabled, select the number of grid lines to be shown on the Y axis. Up to 10 grids can be shown.

Limits

If the Units Selection is enabled, the limits are shown on the trend object along the value scale axis.

- 1. **Minimum** : The smallest displayed value on the Y axis. The range is from 0 to 65535.
- 2. Minimum tag : If enabled, the minimum is determined by a tag instead of a constant.
- 3. Maximum : The highest displayed value on the Y axis. The range is from 0 to 65535
- 4. Maximum tag : If enabled, the maximum is determined by a tag instead of a constant.
- 5. Text Color : The color of the values on the Y scale.

# Trending

### **Time Scale Properties**

Historical Trend : Properties Value scale properties Time scale p Preview 100 Historical Trend	vroperties Start / End Time Tags Tag1 Tag2
	Simulate Language English (United States)
Time scale properties Grids properties No of Grids 2 [1 to 10]	Color

### **Grid Properties**

No of Grids : If the grid option is enabled, up to 10 grids can be selected for the X axis display.

### **Text properties**

- 1. **Scale** : If enabled, the real time grid values are shown along the time scale axis.
- 2. **Format** : Scale formatting can be either HH:MM:SS or HH:MM.
- 3. **Color** : Determines the preferred color of the X axis scale information.

### Start/End Time Tag

This dialogue box allows user to set the start time of the tag with respect to Day, Month, Year along with Hours, Minutes and Seconds and the End time of the tag with respect to the Day, Month, Year along with the Hours, Minutes and Seconds.

ie nem					
	100 Historical	Trend			
	60		_ Simulate _		
	40		Language	English (United States)	•
	20				
	0 HH:MI:SS DD/MM/YY	HE:MI:SS			
Start		Update			
Start Day	D0000 (D0)	Update Month D0001 (D1 )	· Year	D0002(D2) -	
Start Day	D0000 (D0)	Month D0001 (D1)	Year Seconds	D0002(D2) -	
Start Day   Hours	D0000 (D0)	Update Month D0001 (D1)	] Year Seconds	D0002(D2) - D0005(D5) -	
Start Day   Hours   End Day	D0000 ( D0 ) D0003 ( D3 ) D0006 ( D6 )	Update Update Month D0001 (D1) Minute D0004 (D4) Month D0007 (D7)	<ul> <li>Year</li> <li>Seconds</li> <li>Year</li> </ul>	D0002(D2) • D0005(D5) •	

# Trending

## Specific Tag Information

Preview 100 Historical Trend 30 60 40 20 0 HH: MI: SS DD/MI/VY DD/ HH: MI: SS DD/ HH: MI: SS HH: MI: SS DD/ HH: MI: SS DD/ HH: MI: SS HH: MI: SS HI: SS HH: MI: SS HH: MI: SS HI:	Update
Tag S0004 (Number of Historical Alarms Color	

1. **Tag** : 2. **Color** : Defines a 2 byte tag to be used for the trend information to be plotted. Defines the color for the trend information to be plotted.

## **HIMOS FEATURES**

In this chapter. . . .

- PLC Logic Block
- Ladder Instruction Details
- 16-Point Linearization
- PID Controller
- High Speed Counters and Interrupts
- High Speed Timers
- PWM Configuration
- Pulse Output
- Analog Totalizer
- Analog Configuration

## 11.1 PLC Logic Block

Conditional / logical implementation can be achieved by adding a **Execute PLC Logic Block Task** in the **Screen-Ap-plication Task** lists. HIMOSOFT allows the user to create a PLC ladder logic program. A ladder block can be added to any HIMOS series unit, independent of the hardware. The ladder block will be executed even if the unit does not have physical I/O. Keypads or bit buttons can activate bits in the ladder block. If the unit is an HIMOS device with built-in I/O, it will work as a stand alone controller while still being able to simultaneously communicate with other devices.

Ladder logic blocks are saved in the ladder logic block software library. This allows applications to reuse the ladder block. The ladder block is downloaded with the application.

Standard ladder operations include math, data comparison, timers, counters, as well as rotation and shifting of data.

PLC logic blocks can be added to the Global and Power on Tasks in the Application Task List and Screen Tasklists. To add a PLC logic block to the **Power on Tasklist**, go to the **Application Tasklists** and select **Power On Tasklists**. From list of various tasks, select the **Execute PLC Block** task.

Select a Task to add	Close
	Help
Goto Screen	
Goto Next Screen	
Goto Previous Screen	100
GAdd a constant value to Tag	
Subtract a constant value from Tag	
Add Tag B to Tag A	
Subtract Tag B from Tag A	4
Turn Bit On	
Turn Bit Off	X
Toggle Bit	
Copy TagB to TagA	and .
ISwap LagA and LagB	
	140
Copu Tag to STB	
Copy Tag to LED	
Delay	
Wait	4
Copy HIMOS block to HIMOS/PLC block	
Copy HIMOS/PLC block to HIMOS block	

Create a new PLC logic block by clicking **New Block.** If a block is to be edited, select the block to be edited and click **Edit Block.** 

Block Name	Block Description		
Running Timer	BlockComment		^
Power on functions	BlockComment		-
Setup Analog Inputs	BlockComment		
Scale Analog Inputs	BlockComment		
Evaluate user values	BlockLomment		
Stand by	BlockLomment		
Set alarma	BlockComment		
Set Warnings	BlockComment		
Besett Alarms	BlockComment		
Show alarms	BlockComment		
Main screen info	BlockComment		
Motor Control	BlockComment		~
	Edit Block	New Block	

## 11.2 Ladder Instruction Details

Types of Instructions used for developing a ladder are:

- Inputs
- Outputs
- Timer
- Data Compare (for Word and Double word)
- Math Operation (for Word and double word)
- Data Move
- Transition
- Counters
- Shift (for Word and Double word)
- Rotate (for Word and Double word)
- Logarithmic
- Data Conversion
- End

## 11.2.1 Input Instruction

### • Normally Open (NO)

Normally open (NO) is one of the inputs used in ladder. This instruction checks if the bit specified by the operand is high.



**Note:** The user has the freedom to input the value in many ways . For example, to input the value "B0045", user can type either "B45" or "B045" or "B0045". The entry will be automatically converted to "B0045".

### • Immediate Normally Open (INO)

Immediate normally open (INO) is one of the inputs used in ladder. This instruction checks if the bit specified by the operand is high at the instance when this instruction is executed.





## • Normally Close (NC)

Normally close (NC) is one of the inputs used in ladder. This instruction checks if the bit specified by the operand is low.



Supported Operands : Internal Coil
Input Coil
Output Coil
System Coil
Valid Ranges : B0000 to B4999
X0000 to X0099
Y0000 to Y0099
s0000 to s0099

### • Immediate Normally Close (INC)

Immediate normally close (INC) is one of the inputs used in ladder. This instruction checks if the bit specified by the operand is high at the instance when this instruction is executed.



Supported Operands : Input Coil Valid Ranges : X0000 to X0099

## Horizontal Link

Horizontal link is used to join one instruction to other. The horizontal link insures proper contact between various instructions and eliminates open circuit conditions.



## Vertical Link

Vertical link is used to add branches in the ladder.



### 11.2.2 Transition

### • Leading Edge

This is a transition input. The instruction is used to detect the leading edge of the logic to the left of the input. The coil assigned to the leading edge should not be used anywhere else in the application.



Supported Operands : Internal Coil Valid Ranges : B0000 to B0499

### • Trailing Edge

This is a transition input. The instruction is used to detect the trailing edge of the logic to the left of the input. The coil assigned to the leading edge should not be used anywhere else in the application.



Supported Operands : Internal Coil
Valid Ranges : B0000 to B0499

## 11.2.3 Output Instructions

### Output

This represents the output of a rung. An output must be preceded with at least one input. This instruction stores a "high" or "low" value in the bit specified by the operand, depending on the state of the rung logic. A physical output is changed after all logic has been processed.



### • Immediate Output

With an immediate output, the state of a physical output if changed immediately.



### • Set

The Set instruction is used to turn the specified bit ON. When the input to this instruction is high, the bit specified by the operand is turned ON. It stays ON until a reset instruction is activated. In the case of a physical output, the state is not reflected immediately.



## Immediate Set

An immediate set instruction is used to turn the specified bit ON. When the input to this instruction is high, the bit specified by the operand is turned ON and stays on until a reset instruction is activated. In the case of a physical output, the state is reflected immediately.



### • Reset

The reset instruction is used to turn the specified bit OFF. When the input to this instruction is high, the bit specified by the operand is turned OFF. In the case of a physical output, the state is not reflected immediately.

Operand	Supported Operands : Internal Coil Output Coil System Coil
B0100 -[RST]-	Valid Ranges : B0000 to B4999 Y0000 to Y0099 s0000 to s0099

### • Immediate Reset

Immediate set instruction is used to turn the specified bit OFF. When the input to this instruction is high, the bit specified by the operand is turned OFF. In the case of a physical output, the state is reflected immediately.



### 11.2.4 Timers

Three types of timers are supported in ladder blocks. These are as follows:

- 1. Non-retentive Timers
- 2. Retentive Timers
- 3. Single shot Timers

### 1. Non-Retentive Timers

These timers reset the timer count value when the input is detected OFF.

The Non-Retentive type are further classified as

- 1) Non-Retentive TON type
- 2) Non-Retentive TOFF type

### **1.1 Non-Retentive TON timer**

This timer instruction uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the timer's preset. The third cell holds the timer's current value. The second cell displays the name of the timer. The timer can be either of 10ms or 100ms or 1sec, depending on the number of the timer.



Example of Non-Retentive Timer:

A Non-Retentive TON timer can be selected in the ladder with the F5 function key or with a right mouse click on the respective timer button. The ladder editor will place the Timer block on the screen. The ladder editor will not allow the user to place a Timer Block in the first cell of any rung. The working of Non-retentive TON type is illustrated with the help of an example.



Internal coils, B21 and B48 are defined as inputs to TON-N timer T34, which is a 100 msec base timer. The output of the timer is B22. K50 in the first cell of the timer block will give a delay of ( $50 \times 100$  millisecond = 5000 millisecond) or 5 sec. The output bit, B22, will turn on after 5 sec. If either input goes off, the timer count will be reset to zero.



### **1.2 Non-Retentive TOFF Timer**

The Non-Retentive TOFF timer instruction uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of preset. The third cell is the timer selected. The second cell displays the type of the timer. The timer can be either of 10ms or 100millisecond or 1second, depending on the timer selected.

When the input to the timer becomes active, the output is turned on and the timer register starts decrementing from its preset value. The output turns off when the value in the timer register reaches zero. The timer register is set to the timer preset when a leading edge of the input is detected. Whenever the input to the timer is off, the output of timer is on.

	For Preset
	Supported operands : Data register
	Retentive register
	Constant
	System register
	Internal register
	Innut register
	Output register
	Oulput register
Preset Timer register	Valid ranges : D0000 to D0999
	R0000 to R0999
	K0000 to k0999
D0012 TOFF-N (T0002)	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	10000 to 10312
	110000 to 110006
	L 0000 to L 0006
	For timer register
	Supported operands : Timer register
	Valid ranges : for 10mS- T0000 to T0030
	for 100mS- T0031 to T0095
	for 1 sec- T0096 to T0127

Example of Non-Retentive TOFF Timer

A Non-Retentive TOFF type can be selected in the Ladder with the F6 function key or with a right mouse click on the respective timer button cell.

The ladder editor will place the timer block on the screen. A timer block can not be in the first cell of a rung.

The working of a Non-retentive TOFF type is illustrated by the example shown:



The internal coil, B38, is defined as an input to TOFF-N timer T100 which is a 1 sec base timer. The output of the timer is B44. K10 in the first cell of the timer block will give a delay of  $10 \times 1$  sec = 10 sec. The output bit, B44, will turn OFF after 10 sec if no transition occurs on B38.

### Timing Diagram



### 2. Retentive Timer

A retentive timer will retain the current timer count value if the input goes off before the timer has timed out.

The Retentive type are further classified as :

- 1. Retentive TON Timers
- 2. Retentive TOFF Timers

### 2.1 Retentive TON Timers

Timer instruction uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the preset. The third cell timer number. The second cell displays the timer type. The timer can be a 10 millisecond, 100 millisecond, or 1 second time base, depending on the timer number.

When the input to the timer becomes active, timer register starts decrementing from current value. The output turns on when the value in the timer register reaches zero. If the input turns on and the timer register is zero, the timer is loaded with the preset value. Whenever the input to the timer is off, the output of the timer is off.



Example of a Retentive TON Timer:

A Retentive TON type can be selected in the ladder editor with the F2 function key or with a right mouse click on the respective timer button cell. The ladder editor will place the timer block on the screen. A timer block cannot be in the first cell of any rung. The working of the Retentive TON type is illustrated with the help of an example:



The internal coil, B45, is defined as the input to the TON-R timer, T5, which is a 10 msec base timer. The output of the timer is B50. K5 in the first cell of the timer block will give a delay of  $5 \times 10$  msec = 50 msec. The output bit, B50, will turn on after 50 msec.



## 2.2 Retentive TOFF Timer

The Retentive TOFF timer instruction uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the preset. The third cell is the timer number. The second cell displays the timer type. The timer can be a 10 ms, 100 ms, or 1 sec time base, depending on the timer number.

When the input to the timer becomes active, the timer register starts decrementing from the current value. The output turns off when the value in timer register reaches zero. If the input is on and the timer register is zero, the timer is loaded with the preset value. Whenever the input to the timer is off, the output of the timer is on.



A Retentive TOFF timer can be selected with the F3 function key or with a right mouse click on the respective timer button cell.

The ladder editor will place the Timer block on the screen. The timer block cannot be in the first cell of a rung. The working of the Retentive TOFF timer is illustrated with the help of an example.



The internal coil, B100, is the input to TOFF-N timer, T10, which is a 10 msec base timer. The output of the timer is B200. K10 in the first cell of the timer block will give a delay of  $10 \times 10$  msec = 100 msec. The output bit, B200, will turn OFF after 100 msec.

**Timing Diagram** 



### 3. Single-shot Timer

The Single Shot timer instruction uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the preset. The third cell is the timer number. The second cell is the type of the timer. The timer can be a 10 ms, 100 ms, or 1 sec time base, depending on the timer number.

On the leading edge of timer input, the timer becomes active and the timer register starts decrementing from its current value. The output turns on when the value in timer register reaches zero. Once the leading edge of the timer input is detected, the timer remains active even if the input turns off. On the leading edge of the input and if the timer register is zero, the timer is loaded with the preset value.



Example of Single Shot Timer:

The single shot timer is triggered by the rising edge of its input. Once triggered any input transitions on the input will be ignored until the output turns ON after the specified time interval.



## 11.2.5 Counters

Counters are classified as follows:

- 1. Up Counters
- 2. Down Counters
- 3. Up-Down (or reversible) Counters

Counter registers use a 4 byte (2 word) tag. The value of the counter register is set back to zero after 4294967295 counts.

Counters C0000 to C0127 are non-retentive. Their counter registers will be zero at power up. The counter registers in counters C0128 to C0177 are battery backed. They will retain the value they had prior to the unit being powered down.

Transition inputs, branching, and timers are not allowed before a counter instruction.

### 1. Up Counters

An up counter is inserted in two rungs. The top cell is used to enter the value of preset and the bottom cell is used to enter the counter number. It has two inputs: the actual input (top cell), and the reset (bottom cell). On every leading edge of the pulse input, the counter register gets incremented by one. When it reaches its preset value, the output of the counter turns on. It remains on while the counter register is greater that the preset. When the reset input of the counter is turned on, the counter register is set to zero. The counter register remains zero while the reset input is high. The output of the counter will be OFF as long as the reset input is high.





Counter C0010 has a preset value of 500. The counter increments on each off to on transition of the pulse input, B0000. When the counter's value equals the preset value, output B0002 turns on. It will remain on while the counter's value is equal to or greater than the preset. When the reset input, B0001, is detected on, the counter's actual value is set to zero. The actual value register will be continuously set to zero as long as the reset input is on.



### 2. Down Counters

A down counter is inserted in two rungs. The top cell is used to enter the value of the preset and the bottom cell is used to enter the counter number. It has two inputs - the pulse input (top cell) and the reset (bottom cell) input. On every leading edge of input, the counter register gets decremented by one. When it reaches zero, the output of the counter turns on. When the reset input of the counter turns on, the counter register gets loaded with the preset value and the output is turned off. The register will continuously be loaded with the preset value as long as the reset input is on.

The counter register is a 4 byte (2 word) tag. Down counters do not count below zero.

At power on, the counter register is zero and the counter output will be on. The user has to reset the counter to turn off the output.



Example of Down Counter:



As shown in the example above, the input to counter C0100 is B0000. The counter ramps down on each off to on transition of input B0000. When the count reaches zero, output B0002 turns on. The counter value will remain zero once it reaches a value of zero. When reset input B0001 is detected high, the counter gets reloaded with the preset value and output will turn off.

**Timing Diagram** 



3. Up/Down Counter:

An up/down counter is inserted in three rungs. The top cell is used to enter the value of the preset. The bottom cell is the counter number.

It has three inputs - up pulse input (up - top cell), down pulse input (down - middle cell), and reset input (bottom cell). The counter register gets incremented by one on every leading edge at the up input and decremented by one on every leading edge at the down input. When the reset input turns on, the counter register is set to zero. The counter register will be continuously loaded with zero as long as the reset input is high.

When the counter register is equal to the preset, the counter output turns ON.

On the next up pulse input, the preset value is crossed. The counter rolls back to 1, not 0, so that the pulse is not missed. During this transition, the counter output turns off and the counter continues to count from 1 to the preset value.

While counting down, the counter counts down from the preset value to zero. When the counter value is zero, the output turns on. At the next down pulse input, the counter rolls back up to the preset value and counter value is (Preset -1) value so that pulse is not missed. During this transition the counter output turns off.



## Example of UpDown Counter:



As shown in the above example B0000 is defined for UP input, B0001 is defined for Dn input and B0003 is defined as the reset input for the counter C0050. B0002 is defined as output.

The UP preset for the counter is 100. The counter will count up to 100 on every rising edge of B0000. When 100 pulses are counted the output B0002 turns ON. On next rising edge of B0000 the counter O/p will get reset and Counter will show a value 1 indicating the pulse was not missed.

While counting Down, the counter counts down from Preset Value to zero. When counter value is zero ,the output turns ON. At the next Leading Edge on Down Input the counter rolls back up to preset value and counter value is Preset - 1 value so that Pulse is not missed. During this transition the Output turns OFF.

### Application:

These counters can be used to count the number of revolutions made by the shaft of a motor. The up input would add pulses in the clockwise direction and the down input would subtract pulses for counterclockwise rotation. Each time the output toggles on, a second up/down counter would keep track of the number of full revolutions.

### Timing Diagram:



## 11.2.6 Data Compare

### 1. Data Comparison for a word

### 1.1. Equal to

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. If the two 16 bit operands are equal, the output coil is set.



### 1.2. Greater than

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is greater than operand 2. Operands are 16-bit.

For Operand 1

U0000 to U0006 L0000 to L0006



### 1.3 Less Than

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is less than operand 2. Operands are 16 bit.



1.4 Greater Than or Equal to:

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is greater than or equal to operand 2. Operands are 16 bit.



1.5 Less than or equal to:

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is less than or equal to operand 2. Operands are 16 bit.



### 2 Data Comparison for Double word

#### 2.1 Equal to

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is equal to operand 2. Operands are 32 bit.



For Operand	1	
Valid Ranges	: D0000 to D0999	
<sup>o</sup>	R0000 to R0999	
	C0000 to C0177	
	@0000 to @0999	
	\$0000 to \$0063	
For Operand '	2	
For Operand 2	2	
For Operand 2 Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999	
For Operand 2 Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999	
For Operand 2 Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999 K0000 to K9999	
For Operand 2 Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999 K0000 to K9999 C0000 to C0177	
For Operand 2 Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999 K0000 to K9999 C0000 to C0177 @0000 to @0999	

#### 2.2 Greater than

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is greater than operand 2. Operands are 32 bit.



### 2.3 Less than

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is less than operand 2. Operands are 32-bit.



2.4 Greater than or equal to

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is greater than or equal to operand 2. Operands are 32 bit.



For Operana	1	
Valid Ranges	: D0000 to D0999	
Ŭ	R0000 to R0999	
	C0000 to C0177	
	@0000 to @0999	
	S0000 to S0063	
For Operand	2	
For Operand	2	
For Operand . Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999	
For Operand . Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999	
For Operand . Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999 K0000 to K9999	
For Operand . Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999 K0000 to K9999 C0000 to C0177	
For Operand . Valid ranges :	2 D0000 to D0999 R0000 to R0999 K0000 to K9999 C0000 to C0177 @0000 to @0999	

2.5 Less than or equal to

This instruction uses three cells and operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction checks if operand 1 is less than or equal to operand 2. Operands are 32 bit.



## 11.2.7 Math Operations

These functions perform unsigned integer math operations.

### 1. Math for a word

### 1.1 Addition

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction adds two 16 bit operands and stores the result in a 32 bit (4 byte) data register.

			For Operand 1	
			Valid Ranges : D0000 to D0999	
			R0000 to R0999	
			T0000 to T0127	
			@0000 to @0999	
			S0000 to S0063	
			J0000 to J0312	
			U0000 to U0006	
Operand 1	Operand 2	Result	L0000 to L0006	
	· · ·		For Operand 2	
			Valid ranges : D0000 to D0999	
			R0000 to R0999	
			K0000 to K9999	
	D-W (K0100):	> (D0020)-	T0000 to T0127	
			@0000 to @0999	
			S0000 to S0063	
			J0000 to J0312	
			U0000 to U0006	
			L0000 to L0006	
			For Result	
			Valid ranges : D0000 to D0999	
			@0000 to @0999	
			S0000 to S0063	
			J0000 to J0312	
			L0000 to L0006	

## 1.2 Subtraction

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction subtracts operand 2 from operand 1 and stores the result in a 16 bit (2 byte) data register.



For Operand 1	
Valid Ranges :	D0000 to D0999
	R0000 to R0999
	T0000 to T0127
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	U0000 to U0006
	L0000 to L0006
For Operand 2	
Valid ranges :	D0000 to D0999
-	R0000 to R0999
	K0000 to K9999
	T0000 to T0127
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	U0000 to U0006
	L0000 to L0006
For Result	
Valid ranges :	D0000 to D0999
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	L0000 to L0006

### 1.3 Multiplication:

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction multiplies two 16 bit operands and stores the result in a 32 bit (4 byte) data register. LSB of the result is stored in the first tag and MSB is stored in second tag.



For Operand 1	
Valid Ranges :	D0000 to D0999
	R0000 to R0999
	T0000 to T0127
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	U0000 to U0006
	L0000 to L0006
For Operand 2	
Valid ranges :	D0000 to D0999
Ŭ	R0000 to R0999
	K0000 to K9999
	T0000 to T0127
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	U0000 to U0006
	L0000 to L0006
For Result	
Valid ranges :	D0000 to D0999
-	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	1,0000 to 1,0006

### 1.4 Division

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction divides operand 1 by operand 2 and stores the quotient in a 16 bit (2 byte) data register. The remainder is stored in the register following the result register.

Example:

If the quotient is stored in data register D0010, the remainder will be stored in data register D0011.



For Operand 1	
Valid Ranges :	D0000 to D0999
_	R0000 to R0999
	T0000 to T0127
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	U0000 to U0006
	L0000 to L0006
For Operand 2	
Valid ranges :	D0000 to D0999
	R0000 to R0999
	K0000 to K9999
	T0000 to T0127
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
-	J0000 to J0312
l	U0000 to U0006
l	L0000 to L0006
For Result	
Valid ranges :	D0000 to D0999
	@0000 to @0999
	S0000 to S0063
	J0000 to J0312
	100001-1000/

### 2 Math For Double Word

### 2.1 Addition:

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction adds two 32 bit operands and stores the result in a 32 bit (4 byte) data register.



### 2.2 Subtraction

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction subtracts operand 2 from operand 1 and stores the result in a 32 bit (4 byte) data register.



### 2.3 Multiplication

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction multiplies two 32 bit operands and stores the result in a 32 bit (4 byte) data register. LSB of the result is stored in the first tag and MSB is stored in second tag.



### 2.4 Division

This instruction uses five cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell and the result is stored in the fifth cell. The instruction divides operand 1 by operand 2 and stores the quotient in a 32 bit (4 byte) data register. The remainder is stored in the two registers following the result register. The quotient and remainder both are 32 bit (4 byte) data registers.

### Example:

If the quotient is stored in D0016 then the remainder will be stored in D0018. Since D0016 and D0018 are 4 byte tags, D0017 and D0019 are also used.



### 11.2.8 Data Move

### 1 Move (For a word)

This instruction uses three cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell. This instruction moves a value from operand 1 to operand 2. Both operands are 16 bit.



### 2 Move (Double word)

This instruction uses three cells. Operands are inserted in the first and third cell. The instruction moves value from operand 1 to operand 2. Both operands are 32 bit.



### 11.2.9 Shift Instruction

### 1. Shift for a word

### 1.1 Shift Right

The Shift Right (word) instruction performs a 16 bit shift of bits to the on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be shifted right. The LSB of the register is shifted into the carry bit, s0000. If the "Number of shifts to be done" operand is greater than 16, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of shifts to be done" is less than or equal to 16.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.



Example



### 2 Shift for a Double word

### 2.1 Shift Left:

The Shift Left (double word) instruction performs a 32 bit shift of bits to the on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be shifted left. The MSB of the register is shifted into the carry bit, s0000. If the "Number of shifts to be done" operand is greater than 32, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of shifts to be done" is less than or equal to 32.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.


#### Example

B0100 B4999 K0001 SL-D D0000--++\_\_//\-Suppose initially register D000 has the value 2,147,483,648. Shift left operation will take place on rising edge of B0100 as shown below:-D000 s000 Carry MSB LSB After the left shift operation is over, the register D0000 will have value decimal 0 with carry bit set as shown. D000 s000 

### 2.2 Shift right

Carry

**MSB** 

The Shift Right (double word) instruction performs a 32 bit shift of bits to the on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be shifted right. The LSB of the register is shifted into the carry bit, s0000. If the "Number of shifts to be done" operand is greater than 32, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of shifts to be done" is less than or equal to 32.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.



Example

B0100 B4999 → | -------

K0001 SR-D D0000

LSB

Suppose initially register D000 has the value 2,147,483,648. Shift right operation will take place on rising edge of B0100 as shown below:-



## 11.2.10 Rotate

## 1. Rotate for a word

#### 1.1 Rotate left

The Rotate Left (word) instruction performs a 16 bit rotate left operation on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be rotated left. The MSB of the register is shifted into the carry bit, s0000 at each rotate operation.

If the "Number of rotates to be done" operand is greater than 16, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of rotates to be done" is less than or equal to 16. *Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.* 



1.2 Rotate Left with Carry

The Rotate Left (word) with carry instruction performs a 16 bit rotate left operation on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be rotated left. The carry is copied in the LSB of the register and the MSB of the register is copied into the carry bit, s0000 at each rotate operation.

If the "Number of rotates to be done" operand is greater than 15, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of rotates to be done" is less than or equal to 15. *Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.* 



### 1.3 Rotate right

The Rotate Right (word) instruction performs a 16 bit rotate right operation on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be rotated right. The carry bit is copied to the MSB and the LSB of the register is copied into the carry bit, s0000 at each rotate operation.

If the "Number of rotates to be done" operand is greater than 16, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of rotates to be done" is less than or equal to 16.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.



#### 1.4 Rotate right word with carry

The Rotate Right (word) with carry instruction performs a 16 bit rotate right operation on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be rotated right. The carry bit is copied to the MSB and the LSB of the register is copied into the carry bit, s0000, at each rotate operation.

If the "Number of rotates to be done" operand is greater than 15, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of rotates to be done" is less than or equal to 15.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.



### 2 Rotate With Double Word

#### 2.1 Rotate Left:

The Rotate Left (double word) instruction performs a 32 bit rotate left operation on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be rotated left. The MSB of the register is copied in the LSB of register at each rotate. The MSB of the register is copied in the carry bit s0000 at each rotate operation.

If the "Number of rotates to be done" operand is greater than 32, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of rotates to be done" is less than or equal to 32.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.



### Example



Suppose initially D0000 has value as decimal 2,147,483,648. The rotate left operation will take place on the rising edge of B0100 as bellow:-:



2.2 Rotate left double word with carry

The Rotate Left with carry (double word) instruction performs a 32 bit rotate left operation on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be rotated left. The carry bit is copied to the LSB of the register and the MSB of the register is copied to the carry bit, s0000, at each rotate.

If the "Number of rotates to be done" operand is greater than 32, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of rotates to be done" is less than or equal to 32.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.



2.3 Rotate right

Rotate right (double word) instruction performs a 32 bit rotate right operation on the specified register.

The 'Number of rotates to be done' specifies how many times the register is to be rotated right. The LSB of the register is copied in the MSB of register at each rotate. The LSB of the register is copied in the carry bit s0000 at each rotate operation.

If the 'Number of rotates to be done' is greater than 32 then the instruction does nothing. In order for this instruction to work, the user must take care that the 'Number of rotates to be done' is less than or equal to 32.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the i/p.



## Example



## 2. 4 Rotate right double word with carry

The Rotate Right with carry (double word) instruction performs a 32 bit rotate right operation on the specified register. The first operand specifies how many times the register is to be rotated right. The carry bit is copied to the LSB of the register and the MSB of the register is copied to the carry bit, s0000, at each rotate.

If the "Number of rotates to be done" operand is greater than 32, the instruction does nothing. For this instruction to work, the user must take care that the "Number of rotates to be done" is less than or equal to 32.

Note: The operation is performed on leading or trailing edge of the input.



#### Example



Suppose initially the register D0000 has value as decimal 2,147,483,648. The rotate left operation will take place on the rising edge of B0100 as below:-:



MSB

After the rotate operation is over, the register D0000 will have value decimal 1,073,741,824 as below:-



## 11.2.11 Logarithm

Logarithm instructions are used to find the either the natural of Base 10 log of a number or the antilog of a number. 1. Log (Base 10)

The Log (Base 10) instruction calculates the log (base 10) for the specified operand and stores the calculated value in the result data register. It uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the operand and the third cell is the result data register. The operand and result data registers are 4 bytes.



Supported op	erands : Data register Constant
Valid Ranges	: D0000 to D0999
_	K0000 to K9999
	@0000 to @0999

Valid ranges : D0000 to D0999 @0000 to @0999

### 2. Natural Log

The Natural Log instruction calculates the natural log (to the base e) for the specified operand and stores the calculated value in the result data register. It uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the operand and the third cell is the result data register. The operand and result data registers are 4 bytes.



## 3. Antilog (Base 10)

The Natural Log instruction calculates the antilog to the base 10 for the specified operand and stores the calculated value in the result data register. It uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the operand and the third cell is the result data register. The operand and result data registers are 4 bytes.



#### 4. Natural Antilog

The Natural Antilog instruction calculates the natural antilog (to the base e) for the specified operand and stores the calculated value in the result data register. It uses three cells. The first cell holds the value of the operand and the third cell is the result data register. The operand and result data registers are 4 bytes.





Valid ranges : D0000 to D0999 @0000 to @0999

## 11.2.12 Data Conversion

Data conversion instructions are used to convert a value from one data type to another. The ladder editor supports two types of data conversion.

- 1. Integer to Float Data Conversion
- 2. Float to Integer Data Conversion
- 1. Integer to Float:

It is used to convert a 16 bit integer value (operand 1) to 32 bit float value (operand 2).



#### 2. Float to Integer

It is used to convert a 32 bit float value (operand 1) to a 16 bit integer value (operand 2). During conversion the float value is rounded off to the nearest decimal place.



## 11.2.13 Skip Block

When this instruction is enabled in the ladder block, all of the following instructions in the block are skipped for execution. Skip block instruction



## 11.2.14 End Block

The END instruction is the terminating instruction for a ladder block. Ladder instructions are compiled untill the END instruction. Anything after the END is not recognized by the compiler. It is a mandatory instruction. It should be inserted in the last rung of logic block. It can be inserted anywhere in the rung. The editor will move it to the last cell of the rung and add horizontal links.



### 11.3 16-Point Linearization

The concept of linearization is implemented using the equation for a straight line, Y = mX + C between any two points. It enables the user to linearize a nonlinear variable. In the wizard, up to 16 points of linearization can be defined for each of 32 data registers.

In HIMOSOFT, 16 point linearization can be configured as shown below.

Define	Communicate	Utilities	Screen	Objects
Unit	Settings			F3
Netv	Network Configuration F4			F4
Tag	Tag database F5			F5
Scre	ens			F6
Glob	al Keys			F7
Alarr	ns			F8
Appli	ication Tasklists.			F9
Ladder Logic Block F10		F10		
High speed interrupt F11		F11		
High	speed Timer			
Data Logger				
Configure PID Block				
16-P	oint Linearizatio	<b>1</b>		
Time	Proportional PW	/M Config	uration	
Pulse Output				
Anal	og Configuratior	h		
Anal	og Totalizer			
Hide	Project Tools			F12

A left mouse click on the option shown in the circle guides to 16 point linearization Configuration wizard as shown below.

#### General

16-Point Linearization	
General Channel 1 Channel 2	
No. of channels (0-32): 2	
Note	
1. Please download the firmware in the unit when -	
a) These parameters are configured for the first time.	
b) Any of the defined parameters is changed.	
	OK Cancel

Up to 32 channels can be configured for linearization on the General screen.

For each data register (or channel) that is to be linearized, select the appropriate tab. Change the mode to "Non-linear". Determine which data registers is to be the X axis input and which is the Y axis output. Set the number of points of linearization from 2 to 16. The only data type currently supported is unsigned integer.

The input column represents the X axis data points. They can be fixed by using constant (K values), or they can be variable by using data registers.

The output column represents the corresponding Y axis data points. They can be fixed by using constant (K values), or they can be variable by using data registers.

Between any two pairs of points, the output value will be calculated on a straight line basis. If an input value is less than the minimum input value for the channel, the output will be the minimum. If an input value is greater that the largest defined input value, the output will be the largest defined value.

## For example

Suppose we have a data register we want to linearize with four points.

0	0
30	400
70	750
100	1000

The data entry would be as follows:

16-Point Linearization		
General Channel 1 Channel 2		1
Configuration for Channel no: 1	Mode: Non Linear 💌 No. of points: 4 💌	D0000           Input tag:         D         0           D0010         0           Output tag:         D         10           Valid ranges:         (D0000 to D0999)         10
Valid ranges:       (K00000 t         Data type:       unsigned int         1       K00000         1       K         0       K00000         2       K         3       K         70       K         4       K	to K65535) or (D0000 to D0999 (if indirect a	dresses are used instead of constant K] )         Input       Output         K00000       K00000         K00000       K00000
		OK Cancel

**Note:** Linearization is active at power up. Since a data register is zero at power up, the output will be the corresponding value.

## 11.4 PID Controller

A feedback controller is designed to generate an output that causes some corrective effort to be applied to a process so as to drive a measurable process variable, y(t), towards a desired value, known as the set point or reference. All feedback controllers determine their output by observing the difference, called error, between the setpoint and the actual process variable measurement.

The PID loop is one such type of feedback controller which looks at (a) the current value of the error, (b) the integral of the error over a recent time interval, and (c) the current derivative of the error signal to determine not only how much of a correction to apply, but for how long. Each of those three quantities are multiplied by a "tuning constant' and added together. The PID output, c(t), is a weighted sum.

Different manufacturers in the process control industry use different algorithms for their PID controller design. There are three major classifications of PID algorithms that most manufacturers's algorithm fit under, serial, ideal and parallel. The general equations are:

Ideal Algorithm :	OUTPUT = Kc $\left[ e < t > + \frac{1}{I} \int e < t > d < t > + D \frac{de < t >}{dt} \right]$
Parallel :	OUTPUT = Kp [e <t>] + <math>\frac{1}{I} \int e &lt; t &gt; d &lt; t &gt; + D \frac{de &lt; t &gt;}{dt}</math></t>
Series : (Interfacing)	OUTPUT = Kc $\left[ e < t > + \frac{1}{I} \int e < t > d < t > \right] \left[ 1 + D \frac{de < t >}{dt} \right]$

The algorithm implemented in HIMOS is the ideal type. The parameters entered by the user are as follows:

- 1. Proportional Gain = 100 / Proportional band
- 2. Integral gain = Proportional gain \* (1 / reset time in sec.)
- 3. Derivative gain = Proportional gain \* rate time in sec.

A left mouse click on the **Define** menu pops up a drop down list as shown below.

Define	Communicate	Utilities	Screen	Objects
Unit	Unit Settings F3			F3
Netw	Network Configuration F4			F4
Tag	Tag database F5			F5
Scre	Screens F6			F6
Glob	al Keys			F7
Alarr	ns			F8
Appli	Application Tasklists F9			F9
Ladder Logic Block F10		F10		
High speed interrupt F11			F11	
High speed Timer				
Data Logger				
Configure PID Block				
16-Point Linearization				
Time Proportional PWM Configuration				
Pulse Output				
Anal	Analog Configuration			
Anal	og Totalizer			
Hide Project Tools F12		F12		

General



1. Number of Blocks : Determine the number of PID blocks desired. Up to 12 blocks can be defined.

Specific Block

eneral Block 1 Block 2	
Mode: Manual 💌 PID Action: Forward 💌	Alarms High-High
Enable bit (Bxxxx): B0000	Low:
PID Parameters	
Set point (Dxxxx): D0010	Process variable (Dxxxx): D0020
Manipulated variable (Dxxxx): D0030	Dead band (Dxxxx): D0040 ( % of Set point )
Proportional gain (Dxxxx): D0050	Reset time (Dxxxx): D0060 (in sec. )
Derivative gain (Dxxxx): D0070	Sampling time (Dxxxx): D0080 (in sec. )

## To configure a PID block, determine each of the following.

#### Mode

Mode can be "Auto" or "Manual" . "Auto" mode is not supported in this version.

## **PID Action**

This parameter is used to control PID output direction. It can be either "Forward" of "Reverse".

In case of "Forward" action, if the process variable goes below the set point, the manipulated variable increases and if the process variable goes above set point, the manipulated variable decreases.

In case of "Reverse" action, if the process variable goes below the set point, the manipulated variable decreases and if the process variable goes above set point, the manipulated variable increases.

## Enable bit

This parameter is used to start and stop the execution of PID block. If this bit is high, the PID block is executed and if it is low, the execution of PID block is stopped. User can assign an Internal coil from B0000 to B4900 to store the value of enable bit. If the PID block is disabled, the last value of the controlled variable is retained.

#### Set point

The set point is the target value for the process. For eg. in a heating system, stepoint is the temperature value set for the system. The set point and process variable must be given in the same type of units (degrees Celsius, bars, meters per second, etc.). User can assign a data register from D0000 to D0999 to store the value of Setpoint. It should be defined as Float data type (4 Byte) and should be an even number data register (say D0010, D0112....)

### **Process Variable**

This tag holds the actual value of the process variable. Any data register from D0000 to D0999 can be used. It sould be defined as unsigned short data type (2 Byte)

### **Proportional gain**

The proportional mode adjusts the output signal in direct proportion to the controller input (which is the rate of change in error signal. This is not to be confused with the process gain, *kp*. A proportional controller reduces error but does not eliminate it (unless the process has naturally integrating properties), i.e. an offset between the actual and desired value will normally exist. It can also be defined as 100/Proportional band.

User can assign a data register from D0000 to D0999 to store the value of Proportional gain. It should be defined as Float Data type (4 Byte) and should be an even Number Data Register.(say D10,D112...)

#### **Reset time in Seconds**

Reset is often used to describe the integral mode. Reset is the time it takes for the integral action to produce the same change in mv as the Proportional mode initial (static) change. User can assign a data register from D0000 to D0999 to store the value of integral gain. It should be defined as Float Data type and (4 Byte) should be an even Number Data Register.(say D10,D112...)

#### **Derivative gain**

Derivative action (also called rate or pre-act) anticipates where the process is heading by looking at the time rate of change of the controlled variable (its derivative). In theory derivative action should always improve dynamic response and it does in many loops. In others, however, the problem of noisy signals makes the use of derivative action undesirable (differentiating noisy signals can translate into excessive mv movement). Derivative action depends on the slope of the error, unlike P and I. If the error is constant derivative action has no effect. User can assign a data register from D0000 to D0999 to store the value of integral gain. It should be defined as Float Data type and (4 Byte) should be an even Number Data Register. (say D10,D112...).

#### Sampling time

This is the time duration after which the user would like to execute the PID algorithm on the respective block. The sampling time is given in multiples of seconds. User can assign a data register from D0000 to D0999 to store the value of sampling time. User can assign a data register from D0000 to D0999 to store the value of Sampling time. It should be defined as unsigned short Data type (2 bytes).

#### **Manipulated Variable**

This is the output of PID algorithm. This MV is given to actuator of the process in the form of Time Proportional PWM or an Analog Output. It should be defined as unsigned short Data type (2 bytes).

#### Deadband

This is the Band around the Setpoint defined as Deadband (in percentage) X Setpoint X 0.01. If PV Value lies outside this Deadband then MV is 0% or 100% depending upon value of PV In other words, PID will work within the Deadband. The value written in Deadband register will be interpreted in Percentage.User can assign a data register from D0000 to D0999 to store the value of integral gain. It should be defined as Float Data type and (4 Byte) should be an even Number Data Register.(say D10,D112...)

## 11.5 High Speed Counter/Interrupts

Up to four channels of high speed counters or interrupts can be defined. Each channel can have up to 4 presets and the frequency calculated.

High speed interrupt	×0001 💌
Туре	X0001 X0002 X0003 X0004
Conl	figure
lote I. Please download the firn a) These parameters are b) Any of the defined par	nware in the unit when - configured for the first time rameters is changed.

An individual channel can be configured for Interrupt or counter application as shown below.

High speed inte	errupt X0001 💌	
4	Type Interrupt only	
	Interrupt only	
ote		-34
. Please download t	he firmware in the unit when	-
a) These parameter	rs are configured for the first t	ime.
b) Any of the define	ed narameters is changed	

If you select **Interrupt only** option and click on **Configure** button, following window will display.

Configure interrupt	X0001	
🔽 Enable Interrupt	Interrupt transition	Rising 💌
Action when interrupt		
Execute PLC block	Running Timer	
	None Bupping Timer	
	square	
	Lancel	

A high speed interrupt will cause a block of logic to be executed within 5 microseconds. The ladder block will be executed on detection of rising edge transition .

Selecting the 'Counter only' option and clicking on Configure button causes the following screen to be displayed.

Configure counter X0001	
General Rate Reset Preset 1	
Enable counter	Number of presets 1
	C0100
Counter type Normal 💌	Counter register C 0100
	(C) (0 to 0177)
	B0300
Direction type Up	Direction 0/p B 0300
	(B) (0 to 4999)
	B0001
Input A : X0001	Direction I/p B 0001
	(B) (0 to 4999)
	OK Cancel

For the high speed counter, the following properties can be set:

- 1. Counter register : Any counter from C0000 to C0177 can be selected. Counters from C0128 to C0177 are retentive.
- 2. Counter type : Counters can be single channel or quadrature.
- 3. Direction type : For single channel counters, the direction type determines if the pulse input increments or decre ments the counter.
- 4. Number of presets : A maximum of 4 presets can be configured for a counter
- 5. **Input B :** This is enabled for a quadrature type counter. Any input from 1 to 4 can be the second channel for the counter.
- 6. Direction O/p : This is enabled for a quadrature type counter. It is high when the count is increasing.

Configure counter X0001	
General Rate Reset Preset 1	
B0100	D0050
Counter 0/p B 0100	Preset D 0050
(B,Y) (0 to 4999)	(D,K,@) (0 to 4999)
Action	
When preset is reached from a	Bunning Timer
lower value, execute PLC block	
When preset is reached from a higher value, execute PLC block	Running Timer
	Cancel

In the example above, counter output B100 will turn on when the counter value is equal to or greater than the value entered in data register D0050. A low value to high value transition will cause the specified ladder block to be executed while B100 is high and the preset's output bit will be set high. If the counter's value goes from high to low, the corresponding ladder block will be executed and the preset's output bit will be set low.

The counter will be reset to the value defined in the reset tab when the reset bit is high.

#### **Rate Measurement**

A rate measurement is independent of the counter operation. The interrupt can be configured for rate measurement as shown below.

Configure counter X0001	
General Rate Reset Preset 1	
Enable rate calculation	
D0150	T: 200 -
(D) (0 to 0999)	Time span   5 sec
Alarm	D0030
Alarm type Low/High 💌	Limit D 0030 (D,K) (0 to 0999)
B0200	D0010
Alarm Bit B 0200	Low D 0010
(B) (0 to 4999)	(D,K) (0 to 0127)
	OK Cancel

**Rate register:** The measured rate value is contained in the data register selected. In the above configuration screen, D0150 is selected for displaying the rate on input X1. The data register must be configured as a 4 byte tag. The value is a float type in the form of "xxxx.x" hertz. Rate measurement does not require setting up a corresponding high speed counter.

**Time span:** This drop down box selects the rate time base. Time spans from 10 msec to 3 sec can be selected according to the needs of the application. Generally time span for frequencies less than 10 Hz should be in seconds. Frequencies in kHz should have time span in mseconds.

A rate can be measured on high speed pulse inputs up to 25 kHz. The rate measurement is done during interrupt processing.

At high frequencies, other tasks such as keypad scanning, updating the screens, etc. may be delayed. This might make the screen refresh process seem slow. The HIMOS unit communicates with a PLC even while measuring rate at such high frequencies. HIMOS products are tested with a PLC at a 115K baud rate.

The measured rate value will be updated depending upon the time span selected. To explain in details lets take an example of measuring rate of 5 Hz, 500 Hz and 5 kHz.



As shown above, the input frequency is 5 pulses per second. If a time span of 100 msec is selected, the rate will be calculated after the 100 msec time span. The diagram clearly shows that after every 100 msec, the number of pulses measured for the rate calculation will differ. This will cause the rate value to fluctuate. If a time span of 1 sec is selected, the rate will be calculated after a 1 second time span. The measured rate will not fluctuate much.

If the input frequency is around 5 kHz, 500 pulses will be counted in 100 msec and 50 pulses in 10 msec. At higher frequencies, the rate is more accurate with shorter time spans.

Alarm type: The drop down menu gives two alarm options

1. High Low Alarm : This alarm turns Alarm a bit on when the value in the rate is above the alarm limit.

2. **Hysteresis** : This turns the alarm bit on when the rate value crosses the value in Limit register and turns off when the rate value crosses the low register value. The working of the hysteresis type of alarm is shown below.



## **Quadrature Counter:**

figure counter X0001	
meral Rate Reset Preset 1	
Enable counter	Number of presets 1
	C0100
Counter type Quadrature -	Counter register C 0100
	(C) (0 to 0177)
	B0300
Direction type	Direction 0/p B 0300
	(B) (0 to 4999)
	×0003
Input A : X0001	Input B X 0003
	(X) (0 to 0004)
	UK Lance

A quadrature counter can be configured from the **General** pop up screen. The counter increments or decrements depending on the phase difference between input A and input B.

The Direction output bit indicates the direction of counting. While counting up, the direction bit remains off. While counting down, the direction bit is on . The quadrature counter works in 1X mode. If counter crosses the preset limit then the counter output bit is on.

Counter values are 4 byte, unsigned integer.

The Timing Diagram is shown below:



## 11.6 High Speed Timer

The High Speed Timer interrupt allows a ladder program to be executed in parallel to the main program. It will be executed after a predefined time (called the preset), following the setting of the bit s0001, a specific internal bit. By resetting this s0001 bit at the beginning of the interrupt ladder program, this interrupt program will be executed every preset time.

The High Speed Timer interrupt can be used in the following situations:

1. Execute a ladder block after a predefined time. For example, execute a block of ladder a short time after an input interrupt occurs.

2. Force the execution of a ladder block on a timed interrupt basis.

The High Speed Timer interrupt can be selected in the HIMOS software as shown below:

Define	Communicate	Utilities	Screen	Objects
Unit	Unit Settings F3			F3
Netw	Network Configuration F4			F4
Tag	database			F5
Scree	ens			F6
Globa	al Keys			F7
Alarn	NS			F8
Appli	cation Tasklists.			F9
Ladd	Ladder Logic Block F10		F10	
High	High speed interrupt F11			F11
High	High speed Timer			
Data	Data Logger			
Conf	Configure PID Block			
16-Point Linearization				
Time Proportional PWM Configuration				
Pulse	Pulse Output			
Analo	og Configuration	h		
Analog Totalizer				
Analo	og Totalizer			

It can also be selected through the toolbar icon.

Enable unler interrupy	
D0000	B0050
Preset D 0000	Timer O/p B 0050
(D, K,@) (0 to 0999)	(B,Y) (0 to 0999)
Execute PLC block None	<u>*</u>
lote	
1. Control bit s0001 must be tu	rned ON through a ladder block.
2. Timer interrupt generates at	every 'Preset * 500us 'time interval.
3. Please download the firmwa	ire in the unit when -
a) These parameters are co	nfigured for the first time.

Once selected, the "High speed timer interrupt" wizard will appear as shown below:

Enable timer interrupt – This box needs to be checked to enable the "High speed timer interrupt". Once checked, all other options are enabled.

**Preset** – Preset value for timer. The time basis for this timer interrupt is 500 usec. If the preset value is 2 (or if the register Dxxx contains the value 2), the interrupt will be generated after 1000 usec (1 msec).

**Timer O/p** – Output bit indicating through an ON status, that the interrupt has been generated.

**Execute PLC block** – The block of ladder logic when the interrupt is generated.

**IMPORTANT:** The High Speed Timer Interrupt is a single-shot timer, which needs to be enabled by a control bit. The control bit for high-speed timer is s0001. This bit must be turned ON through a ladder block only.

**Note:** If user tries to turn s0001 ON through any other way than a ladder instruction, the high speed timer interrupt will NOT work. The only way the high-speed timer can be enabled is to turn s0001 ON though a ladder block. The ladder can be as simple as:



This ladder block would be added to the "Power-on Tasks". The high speed timer enable bit, s0001, would be on before the execution of the high speed timer interrupt is evaluated. This is shown below:

If the user wants to use this interrupt to force execute a block of ladder on a timed basis, the first rung on this ladder should turn the control bit s0001 on. Then write the logic to be executed at the timed interrupt. Since the control bit is turned off when the interrupt occurs, the bit must be turned back on for the next interrupt to occur. The ladder block will be executed once per interrupt.



#### Example:

Set up the high speed timer interrupt as follows:

in speed timer interrupt	X
Enable timer interrupt	
K2 Preset K 2 (D, K,@) (0 to 4294967295)	B0005 Timer 0 /p B 0005 (B,Y) (0 to 0999)
Execute PLC block Running Tim	er 💽
Note	
1. Control bit s0001 must be turned	ON through a ladder block.
<ol> <li>Control bit s0001 must be turned</li> <li>Timer interrupt generates at ever</li> </ol>	ON through a ladder block. y 'Preset * 500us 'time interval.
<ol> <li>Control bit s0001 must be turned</li> <li>Timer interrupt generates at ever</li> <li>Please download the firmware in         <ul> <li>These parameters are configure</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	ON through a ladder block. y ' Preset * 500us ' time interval. the unit when - red for the first time.

In the example, the timer interrupt is enabled.

1 msec (2 \* 500 usec) after the bit s0001 has been turned on, the interrupt ladder logic included in the PLC block "Start" will run.

Since this logic includes setting bit s0001 (re-enabling the timer interrupt), this ladder logic will execute every 1 msec.

## 11.7 **PWM** Configuration

Analog voltages or currents are often used to directly control a process. In many other cases, the process control needs to be digital value that turns on and off over time. A home heating system is an excellent example. The difference between the desired temperature and the actual temperature causes the furnace to turn on for a length of time proportional to the difference. This is time proportional PWM.

Time proportional PWM can be programmed as follows:

Define	Communicate	Utilities	Screen	Objects
Unit	Unit Settings F3			F3
Netw	Network Configuration F4			F4
Tag	database			F5
Scree	ens			F6
Globa	al Keys			F7
Alarn	ns			F8
Appli	cation Tasklists.			F9
Ladd	Ladder Logic Block F10		F10	
High speed interrupt F11		F11		
High	High speed Timer			
Data Logger				
Configure PID Block				
16-Point Linearization				
Time Proportional PWM Configuration				
Pulse	Pulse Output			
Anal	og Configuratior	<b>.</b>		
Analo	og Totalizer			
Hide	Hide Project Tools F12		F12	

A left mouse click on the option shown in the circle guides to Time Proportional PWM Configuration starts the wizard.

General



Number of Blocks : Define the number of time proportional PWM blocks. User can define maximum 12 blocks.

Specific Block

Time Proportional PWM Configura	ation 🛛 🔀
General Block 1 Block 2	
Configuration for Block no: 1 Enable bit: B 0010 ( B0000 - B4999 or X0000 - X0050 ) or ( Y0000 - Y0050 )	Cycle time (sec.): D 0020
Output bit: B 0020	Duty cycle control register: D 0040 (D0000 - D0999 or K0000 - K4095 )
Note 1. The PWM output is a square wave in 'Duty cycle control register', whi 2. The PID output tag should be copi is used in combination with the PID	e. Its Duty cycle varies according to value ch should vary from 0 to 4095. ied in 'Duty cycle control register', if P'W/M D controller.
	OKCancel

1. Cycle time : This tag holds the value, in seconds, to control the frequency of the square wave.

2. **Duty cycle control register** : This tag holds the analog value to be encoded digitally. The value in the duty cycle control register determines the on and off time percentage of the output. The range of values in this register is from 0 to 4095. When the value is 0, the output bit off during the entire span of the cycle time. A value of 4095 will correspond to 100% a duty cycle. The output bit will be on during the entire span of the cycle time.

3. Enable Bit : This bit enables the Time Proportional PWM controller. It can be controlled anywhere in the application.

4. **PWM Output Bit** : This bit is the output of the Time Proportional PWM controller.

## Working Of PWM

A value of 5 in the cycle time register, D0200, will correspond to a Cycle-Time of 5 sec. A value of 2047 in the duty cycle register will toggle the output bit, B0200, to be on for 2.5 sec and off for 2.5 sec.

## 11.8 Pulse Output

This wizard can be used for motion control applications. A fixed number of pulses can be sent to stepper type drives with an open collector output. Note that different HIMOS models have the NPN or PNP open collector outputs at different pins.

Note: If this wizard is configured, both outputs get configured for pulse outputs. Configuring one channel for fixed number of pulses or continuous pulse output will not allow the other output to be used as a normal output.

Following table shows the Pins.

HIMOS Model	Output Pins
HI12X	Y0 and Y1 (Channel 1 > Y0 Channel 2 >Y1
HI30X	Y10 and Y11 (Channel 1 > Y10 Channel 2 >Y11)
HI41X	Y10 and Y11 (Channel 1 > Y10 Channel 2 > Y11
HI570 / HI575	Not Applicable
HI572 / HI573 / HI577 / HI578	Dedicated Pins
HI120X	No Applicable

Configuration can be done as shown below. In the HIMOSOFT, a left mouse click on Define menu drops down a list of wizards as shown below.

Define	Communicate	Utilities	Screen	Objects
Unit Settings F3			F3	
Netw	Network Configuration F4			F4
Tag	database			F5
Scre	ens			F6
Glob	al Keys			F7
Alarr	ns			F8
Appli	ication Tasklists.			F9
Ladd	Ladder Logic Block F10			F10
High	High speed interrupt F11			F11
High	High speed Timer			
Data	Data Logger			
Configure PID Block				
16-P	16-Point Linearization			
Time Proportional PWM Configuration				
Pulse Output				
Anal	og Configuration	h		
Anal	og Totalizer			
Hide	Project Tools			F12

A left mouse click on the wizard option pops up the channel selection and configuration screen as shown below.

	Output channel: Channel 1 💌
	Channel 1 Channel 2 es output
	Configure
No 1.	ote Please download the firmware in the unit when - a) These parameters are configured for the first time. b) Any of the defined parameters is changed.

**Output Channel** : Select the output channel for configuration. User can select either Channel 1 or Channel 2.

**Channel Type** : User can configure the selected channel either for Fixed number of output pulses or for continuous pulse output.

Click on **Configure** button after making desired selection.

This is the configuration screen for continuous pulse output.

Configuration for Channel 2	
Enable continuous pulse output	
Enable bit: B 0200	Frequency (Hz):
( B0000 - B4999 or X0000 - X0050 )	( D0000 - D0999 or @0000-@0999 or K0200 - K5000 )
Duty cycle: D 0805	
( D0000 - D0999 or @0000-@0999 or	K0000 - K0100 )
	OK Cancel

**Enable Bit** : This bit will enable continuous pulse output. This bit can be enabled in the application or through a ladder block.

**Frequency** : The user can enter a frequency value from 200 to 5000 Hz as a constant. The parameter can also be a data register. Values of the data register must be within the 200 to 5000 Hz range.

**Duty-Cycle** : The duty cycle can vary from 0 to 100%. The pulse width of the output will vary depending on the value in the duty cycle register. For a 50% duty cycle, a value of 50 would be written in this register.
## **HIMOS** Features

#### Fixed number of pulses output

The configuration screen is as shown below.

Configuration for Channel 1
Enable fixed no. of pulses output
Enable bit:       B       0100       Image: No. of Pulses:       D       0100       Image: I
Accel time (sec): D 0110 Decel time (sec): D 0121 ( ( D0000 - D0999 or @00000-@0999 or K0000 - K9999 ) ( D0000 - D0999 or @00000-@0999 or K0000 - K9999 )
Max. freq. (Hz): D 0112 Min. freq. (Hz): D 0115 Min. freq. (Hz): D 0115 Min. freq. (Hz): D 0115 Min. freq. (Hz): D 0000 - 00999 or K0200 - K5000 (D 00000 - 00999 or @00000-@0999 or K0200 - K5000 )
Max. freq. time (sec): D 0117 (D0000 - D0999 or @00000-@0999 or K0000 - K9999 )
OK Cancel

### **HIMOS** Features

**Enable Bit** : This bit will enable the Fixed number of pulses output. This bit can be made ON on Button task or through Ladder.

**Number of Pulses** : The number of Pulses in pulse train can be defined here. It can be constant or Data Entry type. If Data register are used then they must be defined for 4byte .The maximum limit is 4294967295.

Accel time : It is the time required to reach the maximum frequency defined by user, in seconds. Data Register used should be 2 byte

**Decel time** : It is the time required to reach from maximum frequency to minimum frequency defined by user, in seconds. Data Register used should be 2 byte.

**Max frequency** : It is the Maximum frequency at which pulse train can be sent to drive. Max frequency can be 5000Hz. Data Register used should be 2 byte .

**Minimum frequency** : It is the frequency at which pulse train continues after deceleration to complete the number of Pulses. Data register used should be 2 byte

**Maximum Frequency Time** : It is the time for which maximum frequency has to be sent to driver before start of deceleration time.

The trapezoidal profile is as shown below.



#### 11.9 Analog Totalizer

Analog Totalizer is generally used with Flow Transmitters which gives analog value proportional to flow of fluid, e.g. Steam Flow Transmitters. There are three configuration parameters for Analog Totalizer. The totalizer displays values per hour measurement.

1. Enable Bit : This bit Enables or Disables the Totalizer.

**2. Input Tag :** The analog value to be totaled is read in to the Input tag. This tag should be the Unsigned short Data Register (2 Bytes).

**3. Totalizer Tag :** This tag displays the input value which is totaled per hour. This tag should be Counter as user generally require to save the previous total.

**Example :** If input tag reads 600, then totalizer tag will increment to 600 counts in one hour span or 600/60 = 10 per minute.

To enable analog totalizer, select **Define | Analog Totalizer** menu option.

Define	Communicate	Utilities	Screen	Objects
Unit	Settings			F3
Netw	vork Configuratio	on		F4
Tag	database			F5
Scree	ens			F6
Globa	al Keys			F7
Alarn	ns			F8
Appli	cation Tasklists.			F9
Ladd	er Logic Block			F10
High	speed interrupt			F11
High	speed Timer			
Data	Logger			
Conf	igure PID Block.			
16-P	oint Linearizatior	٦		
Time	Proportional PW	/M Config	uration	
Pulse Output				
Anal	og Configuration	h		
Anal	og Totalizer			
Hide	Project Tools			F12

## **HIMOS** Features

When user selects Analog Totalizer option, following window appears.

Analog Totalizer	
General Channel 1 Channel 2	
No. of Channels (0-12): 2	
OK Car	

User can select maximum 12 channels for totalizer.

Channels can be configured as shown below.

Analog Totalizer
General Channel 1 Channel 2
Configuration for Channel no: 1
Enable bit: B 0012
( B0000 - B4999 )
Input tag: D 0020
( D0000 - D0999 or @0000-@0999 )
Totalizer tag: D 0100
( D0000 - D0999 or @0000-@0999 or C0000-C0177 )
OK Cancel

#### 11.10 Analog Configuration

Analog models of HIMOS are used to measure and control various process parameters. Analog Configuration wizard is used for selection of Analog Input and Output channels. Select New Application menu from File menu or click on New Application icon from tool bar.

🖥 HIMOSOFT - [untitled]			
File	Define	Communicate	U
N	ew		1
0	pen		
C	lose	Ctrl+F4	
S	ave	F2	
S	ave as		
Ir	nformatio	n	
In	nport		
E	xport		1
Pi	rint		
E:	xit	Alt+F4	

### **HIMOS** Features



Following screen will be displayed after selecting New Application option.

After selecting desired product, select the particular model. For more details about products, refer Chapter 1.

	ł		
Model List	-		
HI300-16	312-0000-B-*-00		
HI301-16 HI302-16	312-0000-B-R*-0 312-0402-U-B-*-0	0 10	
HI303-16	312-0402-U-B-R*	-00	
	HI303	Digital	Analog
	Inputs	16	04
	Outputs	12	02
/O Type			
Digit	al Outputs : 10	Relay 2 N	PN or PNP Troutput
Anal	og Inputs : m'	V, mA, Therr	nocouple, RTD
Anal	og Outputs : m	Δ,	
Note			
*: R for	Relay NPN, RF	ofor Relay F	'nP
	ientation-		
Display Or	iendadun.		
Display Or	C Horizon	tal (192×6	4 Pixels )

### **HIMOS** Features

After selecting particular model, click on Next button and Analog Configuration wizard will appear as shown below.

Analog Configuration [H	303 -1612-0402-U-**-R-00]	
Analog Input Configuration		
Enable Analog Input		
Channel no.	Channel Type	Analog I/P Value
Input Channel 1	Not Configured	
	Channel Type	
		Confirm
Analog Output Configuration		
Enable Analog Output		Hanna Saith an
Channel no	Channel Type	Analog U/P Value
Dutput Channel 1 💌	Not Configured	
	Channel Type	
		Confirm
		<back ok<="" th=""></back>

#### **Analog Input Configuration**

Enable Analog Input: Check this check box to enable the selection of Analog Input channel.

**Channel no:** Channel number depends on the selection of HIMOS model. Here user can configure 4 input channels as selected HIMOS model has 4 inputs.

**Channel Type:** Channel type also depends upon the selection of HIMOS model. Here selected model supports Universal inputs, so channel types are Thermocouple, mV, mA, RTD and Data register.

Analog I/P Value: Select the Analog Input value to display the value of analog parameter (temperature, mV, mA).

#### **Analog Output Configuration**

Enable Analog Output: Check this check box to enable the selection of Analog Output channel.

**Channel no:** Channel number depends on the selection of HIMOS model. Here user can configure 2 output channels as selected HIMOS model has 2 outputs.

Channel Type: Channel types are mA and Data register.

Analog O/P Value: Select the Analog Output value to display the value of analog parameter (temperature, mA). See Note2

The Analog Input and Output channel configuration is shown in the following screen.

Analog Configuration [H	303 -1612-0402-U-**-R-	-00]	
Analog Input Configuration			
Channel no.	Channel Type	Analog I/P Va	alue
Input Channel 1	Not Configured	D 0000	
Input Channel 2 Input Channel 3 Input Channel 4	Channel Type	Confi	irm (
Analog Output Configuration			
Channel no.	Channel Type	Analog 0/P V	alue
Dutput Channel 1	Not Configured		
	Channel Type		
		Confi	m j
		<back< th=""><th>эк</th></back<>	эк

Note: Data Register is used to configure any channel at Run time.

### **HIMOS** Features

#### **Run time Input Selection values**

Туре	Value
Thermocouple Type B	11
Thermocouple Type R	12
Thermocouple Type S	13
Thermocouple Type E	14
Thermocouple Type J	15
Thermocouple Type K	16
Thermocouple Type N	17
Thermocouple Type T	18
RTD Alpha 1 (0.00385)	9
RTD Alpha 2 (0.00385)	10
mA ( 0 -20 mA )	5
mA ( 4 -20 mA )	7
mV ( 0 -100 mV )	1
mV(0-50 mV)	3

#### **Run time Output Selection values**

Туре	Value
mA ( 0 -40 mA)	1
Volts ( 0 - 10 V)	2

Note: Firmware size increases when user uses the Data register for selection of Input and Output channels.

**Note2:** For analog output, enter the digital count for respective output register and observe the mA output in multimeter. It should be as per following table:

Entered Count	mA Output
0	4
1024	8
2048	12
3072	16
4095	20

### **HIMOS** Features

If Thermocouple is selected as Channel type, then Thermocouple types are as shown below.

Analog Configuration [HI	303 -1612-0402-U-**-R-	00]	
Analog Input Configuration			
Channel no.	Channel Type	Thermocouple Type	Analog I/P Value
Input Channel 1	Thermocouple	Thermocouple B Type	
	Channel Type	Thermocouple R Type Thermocouple S Type Thermocouple E Type Thermocouple J Type Thermocouple K Type Thermocouple N Type Thermocouple T Type	Confirm
Analog Output Configuration			
Channel no.	Channel Type		Analog 0/P Value
Output Channel 1 💌	Not Configured	×	
	Channel Type		Confirm
12-		<8	ack OK

To configure particular channel select Channel number, Channel type channel subtype, Analog input value and click on Confirm button. The selected channel will be configured.

Follow the same procedure for configuring Analog Output channel.

### **PRINTING**

In this chapter. . . .

- Printing from HIMOS unit
- Printing from HIMOSOFT Software
- Printer Port Setup

### 12.1 Printing from HIMOS unit

Configure printing port by selecting Baud rate, Parity and Number of Bits from Network Configuration.

Network Confi	guration			
Node address Com1 Com2	Ethernet	Name	HIMOS / PLC	Blocks
000 000	(Lati)	Operator Panel	HI575 ( Horizontal )	00028
Port Cor	m1 _	Port settings		
Protocol Ser	rial printer	•		
Model		<u>×</u>		Add
Address	[0	- 255 ]	Ethemet PLC	Delete
Name 🔽		(Max 15)	PLC Port ( 0 to 65535 )	Change
Inter frame delay	(	0 to 3000 ) ms		
Response time out	t	10 to 6000 ) ms	PLC specific settings	
Retry Count	(	0 to 5 )		<u>Close</u> <u>H</u> elp

 Presentation of screen on printer page decided by No of Columns, Terminating Char and Max chars per screen.
 Number Of Columns: By default this field is set to 80. But user can set any value upto column width of printer. Maximum limit is 255.

3. Terminating Char: By default this char is NONE, Options are given below -

NONE	:	No char.
CR	:	Carriage returns.
LF	:	Line Feed.
CR + LI	₽.	Carriage return + Line Feed

HIMOS will send selected terminating character after completion of number of characters decided in No of column field.

4. Max Chars per screen: By default this field shows, max 5x7 font chars present in one screen. User can select how many characters he want to print from screen. Please note that user cant select starting location for printing, it is always Considered as a top left of the screen.

## Printing

#### **Examples:** Considering Printer column width is 80. 1. No Of Columns - 80 Terminating Char - NONE Result - After printing 80 chars, carriage of printer comes to next New line automatically. 2. No Of Columns - 50 Terminating Char - NONE Result - As there is no terminating char, printer will print continuous 80 char from screen and then carriage of printer comes to next new line automatically. No Of Columns - 50 3. Terminating Char - CR Result - After printing 50 chars carriage will return to starting location of same line. No Of Columns - 50 4. **Terminating Char - LF**

- **Result** After printing 50 chars, printer will insert 1 blank line of column width. And from same location next 50 chars will print.
- 5. No Of Columns 50
   Terminating Char CR + LF
   Result After printing 50 chars , printer will insert 1 blank line of column width and carriage will return to home position.

**Note:** Printer can print 5x7 font in same proportion. But if user select higher font size, then number of spaces will be inserted in two characters as per font size.

### 12.2 Printing from HIMOSOFT Software

Select the File | Print menu option to print the HIMOS application.

File	Define	Communicate	ι
N	ew		
0	pen		
C	lose	Ctrl+F4	
Sa	ave	F2	
Sa	ave as		
Ir	formatio	Π	
In	nport		
E	xport		
Pr	rint		
E	≺it	Alt+F4	

For printing, user should close the screen session first.



# Printing

Select the items that user wants to print.

	Application TaskList
Project Information	🔽 Global Keys
🔽 Unit Settings	🔽 Screen TaskList
🔽 Nodes	🔽 Screen Keys
🔽 Tags	🔽 Alarms
Screens	

#### 12.3 Printer Port Setup

A printer port can be set through Network Configuration. Select Serial Printer in the Network Configuration and when you click on Comm Settings, following window appears.

Printer port setup		
<u>B</u> aud Rate	9600	-
<u>Parity</u>	None	•
N <u>u</u> mber of Bits	8	•
Number of columns	80 [0	1 - 80 ]
Terminating characte	None 💌	
<u>N</u> umber of characters to print	1590 1 to	51590

Parity can be None, Even or Odd.

Number of bits can be 7 or 8.

The parameters for setting up the printer are:

- 1. Baud Rate:
- 2. Parity:
- 3. Number of bits:
- 4. Number of columns:
- 5. Terminating Character:
- 6. Number of characters to print:

```
Terminating character can be None, CR (Carriage Return), LF (Line Feed) or CR+LF.
The range is a minimum of 1 to the maximum of 256 characters.
```

Number of columns can be minimum 1 to maximum 255.

Supported Baud Rates are 4800, 9600, 19.2K, 38.4K, 57.6K, 115.2K.

Click OK to set the parameters.

### **MISCELLANEOUS**

In this chapter. . . .

- Memory Configuration Wizard
- Font Editor
- Associate a Screen
- Real Time Clock
- On Line Ladder Monitoring
- On Line Screen Monitoring
- Convert Application
- Ethernet Settings

### 13.1 HIMOS Memory Status

User can see the memory status of his application from Memory Configuration Wizard. It gives information about the available memory of the application, the used memory in the application and the free memory in terms of Bytes, KB and percentage.

Memory Configuration Wizard can be opened from **Utilities | HIMOS Memory Status** menu.

Utilities	Help
On Li	ne Ladder Monitor
On Li	ne Screen Monitor
Displa	ay Logged Data
Font	Editor
Othe	r Utilities
Imag	e Conversion to bmp
HIMC	S Memory Status
Clear	Picture Library
Conv	ert Application

After selecting HIMOS Memory Status following window will be displayed.

Mamoru	Dutos	MD	Decembers	- Logger Memo	ory	
Memory	bytes	MD	Fercentage			
Available	3145728	3	100	Alloted :	0	
Used	10132	1	1			
Free	3135596	2	99			
Details				Ladder		
Definition Typ	be Tol	al	Bytes	Memory	Bytes	KB
Nodes		1	862	Available	131072	128
Screens		6	7640	Used	5714	5
Keys		0	0	Free	125358	122
Alarms		0	0			
Power-on Ta	sks	1	6	Global Mode Add	Blocks Block A	ddraes
Global Tasks		0	0	NUUE ADD	iess Diuck-4,	001622
		•	0			
Logger			0			
Logger Blocks to be	read	0	U			
Logger Blocks to be Tag names	read	0 -	0			

The above window displays the information about Application memory, Logger memory, Ladder memory and the other details like nodes, screens, alarms etc..

Application Memory: Shows total available memory, used memory and free memory in Bytes, MB and in percentage.

Logger Memory: Shows total available logger menory, used memory and free memory.

Ladder Memory: Shows total available Ladder menory, used memory and free memory.

#### 13.2 Font Editor

The Font Editor is used to edit the different fonts of different sizes of HIMOS font. It can edit four types of fonts:

- 1.5X7
- 2.7X14
- 3. 10 X 14
- 4. 20 X 28



Characters for these fonts can be edited and modified using the font editor utility under the Utilities Menu.

Utilities	Screen	Objects	Tools								
On Lir	On Line Ladder Monitor										
On Lir	ne Screen	Monitor									
Displa	ay Logged	Data									
Font	Font Editor										
Image	Image Conversion to bmp										
Prizm	Memory 3	Status									
Clear	Picture Li	brary									
Conv	ert Applic	ation									

When selecting the Font Editor from the utility menu, the screen should be on the lowest zoom level only. If it is not, the software will change the screen to lowest zoom level by displaying the following message.

Font Edit	or	
le Load Def	ault About	
Edit font	Font size-[5x7]	
Save	Font size-[7×14]	
Exit	Font size-[10×14]	
	Font size-[20x28]	

The following window shows the 256 supported characters for the selected font. Select the character to be modified.



To use the modified font in HIMOS unit, the fonts must be downloaded to the unit. The font download option is located in the download options list.

#### **Character Set**

Modified characters can be entered on the screen using the character map. It is located under the **Screen** menu and Screen toolbar.

#### Character Set option in menu bar

Screen	Objects	Tools	Help						
New.									
Delet	е								
Dupli	cate								
Initia	Initialize								
Scree	Screen Information								
View	All Screen	s							
Selec	Select Screen								
Task-	lists of Sci	reen							
Show	Alpha-nu	meric Gr	id						
Hide	Touch-scr	een Grid							
Grid	Configurat	ion							
Char	acter Set.								
Hide	Screen To	ols							
Close	Screens :	session							

#### Character Set option in tool bar

Scr	een	tool	s	×
ß	$\boxtimes$	6		9
¢	令	卶	F	012 Aab
æ,	Q			1

This option is enabled only when the user selects the fonts and place the fonts on the screen. If the use selects  $10 \times 14$  fonts, the character set will display only 10x14 fonts.

**Note:** If the user changes the Font of 10x14, only the changes will be reflected in the character set.

3 2 ! ? 4 ]	4 "	5 # A	6 \$ B	7 % C a	8 & D	9 , E	10 ( F	11 ) G	12 ¥	13 + I	14 , J	15 - K	16 •	17 /	18 Ø	19 1	20 2	21	22 4	23 5	24	25 7	26 8	27 9	28	29 ;
2 ! > ? • ]	"	# A -	\$ B	Z C a	8 D b	, E	( F	) G	×	+ I	, J	- K	•	/ M	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	•	;
> ? €]	a ^	A _	В	Ca	D	E	F	G	Η	Ι	J	K		M	N	0	D	0	D	-	-					
[]	^	_		a	h	-	1000					1.2		11	11	U	F	U.	R	2		U	V	W	X	Y
. 1					-	6	d	e	f	9	h	i	j	k	1	m	n	0	P	9	r	S	t	u	V	ω
	1	>	~	+	ø	β	$\mathbf{r}$	Δ	e	η	θ	λ	٣	Л	٩	6	ζ.	φ	Ω	Σ	£	S	BK.	00	J	x
2 3	×	ž	4	ſГ	±				г	4	$\sim$	-	₹	7	1	5	I	*	Þ	그	Ξ	19	-	7	1	2
) Ŧ	2	$\tau$		Ŧ	9	Z	t	9	2	Ŧ	19	Ŧ	ŀ	$\left  t \right $	_	7	7	1	Ĥ.	E	7		市	$\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$	Ξ	4
ב י	Ξ	5	9	1b	V		7	$\mathcal{D}$	2		Ø	ä	ß	ε	М	6	Ρ	9	υĽ	-1	j		Ф	ŧ	ĥ	ö
	Ω	ü	Σ	π	x	9	Ŧ	Б	m	÷	0		(c)										//			
],	† 1 ∞	† ク 1 ∃ ∞ Ω	† ク ケ 1 ∃ ラ ∞ Ω ü	+ 7 7 ⊐ 1 ∃ 7 9 ∞ΩüΣ	+ ク ケ コ サ コ ヨ ラ リ ル ∞ Ω ü Σ π	≠ ク ケ コ サ シ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ∞ Ω ü Σ π ⊼	+ 2 7 ⊐ 7 5 ス ユヨラリルレロ ∞ΩüΣπ菜У	+ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ∞ Ω ü Σ π ⊼	+ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ∞ Ω ü Σ π ⊼ ソ ∓ ⊼		≠       ク       ↑       □       サ       ▷       ス       セ       9       チ         □       ∃       う       リ       □ <td>≠       ク       勹       □       ⑦       ▷       ス       セ       9       チ       ツ         ⊥       ∃       ラ       ワ       ル       レ       □       ワ       ン       °       °       α         ∞       Ω       ü       Σ       π       ∑       Y       ¥       K       H       ÷       0</td> <td></td> <td><b>† 7 3 7 8 7 8 7 9 7 7 8 9 7 7 8 9 7 7 8 9 7 1</b> <th< td=""><td></td><td></td><td>+ ク 7 コ 7 ジ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン °° α ä β ε ዞ δ ∞ Ω ü Σ π ⊼ Υ ギ ⊼ ฅ ÷ Ω</td><td></td><td>キ ワ 7 コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン °° ペ ä β ε ዞ 6 Ρ 9         ∞ Ω ü Σ π 菜 Υ ギ ⊼ ฅ ÷ Ω</td><td>キ       ク       7       □       7       9       7       1       1       2       3       1       1         ユ       3       7       1       1       0       7       2       2       7       1       1       1       1       2       3       1<td>キ       ク       フ       フ       マ       マ       9       チ       ツ       テ       ナ       二       ス       ス       1       <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""></th1<></th1<></th1<></td><td>キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ -1 j ∞ Ω ü Σ π 泵 Υ ギ Σ 円 ÷ Ω</td><td>キ       ク       7       □       7       0       1       2       7       1       1       2       7       1</td><td>キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ヘ ホ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ Ⅰ j × Φ ∞ Ω ü Σ π X Y ギ Ϝ 円 ÷ 0</td><td>≠       ク       つ       フ       マ       ク       チ       ツ       チ       ト       ナ       ニ       ス       ス       レ       し       へ       ホ       ス         コ       3       ク       リ       レ       ロ       つ       ○<td>≠       ク       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       1</td></td></td></th<></td>	≠       ク       勹       □       ⑦       ▷       ス       セ       9       チ       ツ         ⊥       ∃       ラ       ワ       ル       レ       □       ワ       ン       °       °       α         ∞       Ω       ü       Σ       π       ∑       Y       ¥       K       H       ÷       0		<b>† 7 3 7 8 7 8 7 9 7 7 8 9 7 7 8 9 7 7 8 9 7 1</b> <th< td=""><td></td><td></td><td>+ ク 7 コ 7 ジ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン °° α ä β ε ዞ δ ∞ Ω ü Σ π ⊼ Υ ギ ⊼ ฅ ÷ Ω</td><td></td><td>キ ワ 7 コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン °° ペ ä β ε ዞ 6 Ρ 9         ∞ Ω ü Σ π 菜 Υ ギ ⊼ ฅ ÷ Ω</td><td>キ       ク       7       □       7       9       7       1       1       2       3       1       1         ユ       3       7       1       1       0       7       2       2       7       1       1       1       1       2       3       1<td>キ       ク       フ       フ       マ       マ       9       チ       ツ       テ       ナ       二       ス       ス       1       <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""></th1<></th1<></th1<></td><td>キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ -1 j ∞ Ω ü Σ π 泵 Υ ギ Σ 円 ÷ Ω</td><td>キ       ク       7       □       7       0       1       2       7       1       1       2       7       1</td><td>キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ヘ ホ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ Ⅰ j × Φ ∞ Ω ü Σ π X Y ギ Ϝ 円 ÷ 0</td><td>≠       ク       つ       フ       マ       ク       チ       ツ       チ       ト       ナ       ニ       ス       ス       レ       し       へ       ホ       ス         コ       3       ク       リ       レ       ロ       つ       ○<td>≠       ク       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       1</td></td></td></th<>			+ ク 7 コ 7 ジ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン °° α ä β ε ዞ δ ∞ Ω ü Σ π ⊼ Υ ギ ⊼ ฅ ÷ Ω		キ ワ 7 コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン °° ペ ä β ε ዞ 6 Ρ 9         ∞ Ω ü Σ π 菜 Υ ギ ⊼ ฅ ÷ Ω	キ       ク       7       □       7       9       7       1       1       2       3       1       1         ユ       3       7       1       1       0       7       2       2       7       1       1       1       1       2       3       1 <td>キ       ク       フ       フ       マ       マ       9       チ       ツ       テ       ナ       二       ス       ス       1       <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""></th1<></th1<></th1<></td> <td>キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ -1 j ∞ Ω ü Σ π 泵 Υ ギ Σ 円 ÷ Ω</td> <td>キ       ク       7       □       7       0       1       2       7       1       1       2       7       1</td> <td>キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ヘ ホ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ Ⅰ j × Φ ∞ Ω ü Σ π X Y ギ Ϝ 円 ÷ 0</td> <td>≠       ク       つ       フ       マ       ク       チ       ツ       チ       ト       ナ       ニ       ス       ス       レ       し       へ       ホ       ス         コ       3       ク       リ       レ       ロ       つ       ○<td>≠       ク       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       1</td></td>	キ       ク       フ       フ       マ       マ       9       チ       ツ       テ       ナ       二       ス       ス       1 <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""></th1<></th1<></th1<>	キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ -1 j ∞ Ω ü Σ π 泵 Υ ギ Σ 円 ÷ Ω	キ       ク       7       □       7       0       1       2       7       1       1       2       7       1	キ ク ケ コ サ シ ス セ ソ タ チ ツ テ ト ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ ∩ ヒ フ ヘ ホ ユ ヨ ラ リ ル レ ロ ワ ン ° ° α ä β ε ዞ 6 P 9 σ Ⅰ j × Φ ∞ Ω ü Σ π X Y ギ Ϝ 円 ÷ 0	≠       ク       つ       フ       マ       ク       チ       ツ       チ       ト       ナ       ニ       ス       ス       レ       し       へ       ホ       ス         コ       3       ク       リ       レ       ロ       つ       ○ <td>≠       ク       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       1</td>	≠       ク       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       7       □       1

The character set includes all characters from 0 to 255.

**Note:** The first 31 characters are non-ASCII characters. Characters Hex 16 to Hex 31 are reserved by Windows. If these characters are modified; they will not be reflected on computer screen.

#### 13.3 Associate a Screen

This option is available in the Screen Information dialogue box.

New Screen				
Screen <u>N</u> umber Screen Na <u>m</u> e	4 [1-6 Screen4	55000 ]	Screen Properties Display only	
<u>P</u> assword Screen <u>B</u> ackground Screen Type	[1-9	Description	eters	< >
A <u>s</u> sociated Scree	ens (Max:1)	<- <u>A</u> ssociate	Available Screens 000001 Screen1 00002 Screen2 00003 Screen3	
			<u>D</u> k <u>C</u> ancel	Help

Any screen can be associated with another screen. The objects on the associated screen will a part of the other screen. This is especially useful if the same information is duplicated. Objects in the associated screen can not be edited in the screen being edited. Using associated screens conserves memory.

Select a screen which is to be associated from the list of available screens and click on **Associate** button. User can unassociate a screen by clicking on **Unassociate** button. Only one screen can be associated in a project.

### 13.4 Real Time Clock

The entire HIMOS series has built in Real Time Clock (RTC). This clock has battery backup. In the absence of power, the battery will retain the clock settings for approximately 8 years.

The time and date information is available through Default System Tags defined in Tag Database.

Tags						
No	Port Node	Block	Tag	Byte(s)	Tag-Name	Close
00009 00010 00011 00012 00013 00014 00015 00016 00017 00018	00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000           00         000	S0004 : 001 S0005 : 001 S0006 : 001 S0010 : 001 S0011 : 001 S0012 : 001 S0013 : 001 S0014 : 001 S0015 : 001 S0016 : 001	\$0004 \$0005 \$0006 \$0010 \$0011 \$0012 \$0013 \$0013 \$0014 \$0015 \$0016	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	Number of Historical Alarms Screen trigger register Screen saver time RTC Date RTC Month RTC Year RTC Hour RTC Min RTC Sec RTC day of week	Help Delete
00019		\$0017:001 \$0000:001	S0017 s0000	2	ScanTime Register Carry bit	
Node	[[000:0per	ator Panel] Prizm-unit			<u> </u>	
			System Coil		Read - Write	Add
Tag-Type	C Registe	r 📀 Coil or Bit-addr	essed Register			
	Size : 1 b	it (0000 - 00)	99]			Change
Coil	\$0000	0000	•			
Tag- <u>N</u> ame					Max 40 chars	Cancel
<u>B</u> yte(s)	j –	<b>*</b>				

The tags assigned for RTC are as follows:

Sr. No.	Bytes	Tag Name	Permission
1. 2. 3. 4. 5.	2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	RTC-Day RTC-Month RTC-Year RTC-Hour RTC-Min RTC-Sec	Read Only Read Only Read Only Read Only Read Only Read Only
7.	2	RTC-Day of Week	Read Only

An application can make use of these Default System Tags for displaying and for decision making.

These default system registers are Read only (as shown in table), so you can not write anything to these registers.

**RTC Tasks present in Tasklist:** 

3	Goto Screen	
	Goto Next Screen	
- 4	Goto Previous Screen	
	Write value to Tag	_
	Add a constant value to Tag	
	Subtract a constant value from Tag	
	Add Tag B to Tag A	
	Subtract Tag B from Tag A	
	Turn Bit On	
- 2	Turn Bit Off	
6	Toggle Bit	
	Copy TagB to TagA	
	Swan Tagó and TagR	
	Print Data	
	Set BTC	
	Copy Lag to STB	
	Copy Tag to LED	
	Delau	
	Wait	
4	Copy Prizm block to Prizm/PLC block	
	Copy PLC Hark to Bizm block	
d	Copy BTC to PLC block	
	Execute PLL, Logic Block	
	Goto Popup Screen	

Set RTC: For details, please refer Chapter 6.
 Copy RTC to PLC: For details, please refer Chapter 6.

### 13.5 On Line Ladder Monitoring

On Line Ladder Monitoring is used to monitor the tags used in a ladder block, at run time. User can monitor any active block, i.e. a block running in either Power on tasks, Global tasks or Screen tasks.

It can also be used as a tool to debug the ladder. By using On Line ladder monitoring, there is no need to embed the ladder tags on the screen.

Step 1 : Configuration of Modbus Slave Driver

In the example given below COM1 is configured as Modbus Slave.

Network Co	onfiguratio	n		×
Node addre	nss m2 Etherne	t Name	HIMOS / PLC	Blocks
000 000 001		Operator Panel Com1 : Node1	HI303 -1612-0402-U- <sup>x*</sup> -R-00 Modbus ( Unit as Slave ) ( MODBUS Slave (Ev3) )	00019 00000
Port Protocol Model	Com1 Modbus ( Ur MODBUS SI	Port settings  It as Slave )  Iave (Ev3)	[	dd
Address	02 [	0 to 255 ]	Ethemet PLC	slete
Name	Com1 : Node	e2 (Max 15)	PLC Port (0 to 65535 )	ange
Inter frame delay	10	( 0 to 3000 ) ms		
Response time out	800	(10 to 6000 ) ms	PLC specific settings	
Retry count	3	(0 to 5)		

Note : Modbus (Unit as Slave ) Protocol with model MODBUS Slave (EV3) must be configured at either of the ports.

The Port settings should be as follows.

<u>B</u> aud Rate	115.2K	•
<u>P</u> arity	None	•
<u>D</u> ata Bits	8	•
<u>S</u> top Bits	1	•

Note: Baud Rate must be 115.2 K and Parity must be None.

Step 2 : Download Application and Firmware in the unit.

Step 3 : Invoke the Ladder monitor window by selecting Utilities | On Line Ladder Monitoring menu option.

<b>-</b> F	IIMOSO	FT - [untitle	d]	
File	Define	Communicate	Utilities	Help
			On Li	ne Ladder Monitor 🛒
			On Li	ne Screen Monitor
			Displa	ay Logged Data
			Font Editor	
			Imag	e Conversion to bmp
			HIMC	S Memory Status
			Clear	Picture Library
			Conv	ert Application

Following window will appear.

📰 Ladd	er On Line Monitor		- 7 🗙
Operation			
1		Address Val	je Statistica statisti statistica statistica statistica statistica statistica statistica
2		-	
3		-	
4	-	-	
5		-	
6	-	-	
7		-	
8		-	~
EDIT LOGI	C BLOCK		NUM

Step 4: Open the ladder block to be monitored.

📓 Ladder On Line Monitor		
Operation		
Open block	Open Block	- Address Value
Disconnect COM Port	Block List	
Exit Alt+F4	square	
3 -		-
4 -	Block Name	-
5 -	square	-
6 -	Open Cancel	-
7 -		-
8 -		-
Open existing block		NUM

In this example, 'Square' block will be opened.

🖾 Lado	ler On Line Monitor		
Operation	n		
1		[K0080 MOA-A D0000]-	Address 🛆 Value 🔷
2	B0000		0
3		[ЕND]	
4		1	
5	-1	-	
6	-	-	
7	-1	8-	
8		8_	
EDIT LOG	I IC BLOCK		NUM

**Step 5**: Select the communication port for the PC.

📰 Ladde	r On Line Monitor	
Operation		
Open blo Connect Disconne COM Por Slave Ac Exit Alt	ck ct t Port COM1 F4	Address Value
3 -		-
4 -		-
5 -		-
6 -		-
7 -		-
8 -		-
		NUM

Step 6: Click "Connect" to start the communication. Following window will show the communication.

📰 Lado	ler On Line Monitor			
Operation				
1	B0000	K0080 MOV-W D0000	Address △ 0 80000 1 00000 8	
2	B0000		00000	
3		[END]		
4		1		
5		-		
6	-	-		
7	-)	-		
8				
EDIT LOG	IC BLOCK			NUM

### 13.6 On Line Screen Monitoring

On Line Screen Monitor is used to monitor all the tags used in a application, at run time. The tags used in the Application task list are automatically added in the monitor window. User can also add the tags to be monitor. It can also be used as a tool to debug the application. By using On Line screen monitoring, there is no need to embed the tags on the screen.

Step 1 : Configuration of Modbus Slave Driver

In the example given below COM1 is configured as Modbus Slave.

Network Co	onfigurati	on		
Node addre Com1 Cor	n <mark>2</mark> Ethern	iet Name	HIMOS / PLC	Blocks
000 000 001		Operator Panel Com1 : Node1	HI303 -1612-0402-U-**-R-00 Modbus ( Unit as Slave ) ( MODBUS Slave )	00019 [E∨3) ) 00000
Port Protocol Model	Com1 Modbus ( L MODBUS S	Port settings Init as Slave ) Slave (Ev3)		
- Node Address	02	[ 0 to 255 ]	Ethernet PLC	<u>D</u> elete
Name	Com1 : Not	de2 (Max 15)	PLC Port (0 to 65535 )	Change
Inter frame delay	10	( 0 to 3000 ) ms		
Response time out	800	( 10 to 6000 ) ms	PLC specific settings	
Retry count	3	(0 to 5)		<u>Close</u> <u>H</u> elp

Note: Modbus (Unit as Slave) Protocol with model MODBUS Slave (EV3) must be configured at either of the ports.

The Port settings should be as follows.

<u>B</u> aud Rate	115.2K	-
<u>P</u> arity	None	•
<u>D</u> ata Bits	8	•
<u>S</u> top Bits	1	•

Note: Baud Rate must be 115.2 K and Parity must be None.

Step 2 : Download Application and Firmware in the unit.

Step 3 : Invoke the Screen monitor window by selecting Utilities | On Line Screen Monitoring menu option.

<del>۳</del> ۲	IIMOSO	FT - [untitle	d]	600 m
File	Define	Communicate	Utilities	Help
			On Li	ne Ladder Monitor
			On Li	ne Screen Monitor 🛛 🖡
			Displa	ay Logged Data
			Font	Editor
			Imag	e Conversion to bmp
			HIMC	S Memory Status
			Clear	Picture Library
			Conv	ert Application

The screen monitor window will be as follows.



**Step 4** : The tags, which are used with the screen are automatically added in the screen monitor window. User can also monitor the user defined tags by defining the Block. In Block window specify the 'Address' and the 'Size'.

	Line mu	mitor	
Block	s Operati Value	on New block	
Font		Block	
		Address D00	00
		Size 1	(1 to 256)
		Address Ranges Data Register : Retentive Register : System Register : Internal Register : Input Register : Output Register :	(D0000 to D0999) (R0000 to D1399) (S0000 to S0063) (J0000 to J0312) (U0000 to U0006) (L0000 to L0006)
		Counter Register : Timer Register : System Coil : Internal Coil : Input Coil : Output Coil :	(C0000 to C0177) (T0000 to T0127) (s0000 to s0099) (B0000 to 84999) (X0000 to X0999) (Y0000 to Y0999)
			OK Cancel
Screen Or Define Setting	I Line Mo s Operat	o <mark>nitor</mark> tion	
Screen Or Define Setting Address A	<mark>i Line Mo</mark> s S Operati Value	o <mark>nitor</mark> tion	
Screen Or Define Setting Address A	<b>Line Mo</b> s Operat Value 0	onitor tion	
Screen Or Define Setting Address A B0000 D0000	D Line Mo s Operat Value 0	onitor tion	
Screen Or Define Setting Address      B0000 D0000 D0001 D0002	Value 0 0 0 0 0	onitor tion	

Step 5 : Select the communication port for the PC.

Screen On Line Monitor	
Define Settings Operation	
Addres Slave Address	Select COM Port

Step 6 : Click 'Connect' and communication starts.



Following window shows the communication.

Screen On	Screen On Line Monitor		
Define Setting	is Operation		
Address $\triangle$	Value		
B0000	1		
D0000	80		
D0001	0		
D0002	0		

User can change the font by clicking on Font menu option.

Scr	een On Line Monitor	- 2 3	
Define	Settings Operation		
Block Font			

Screen	On Line	e Monitor 📃 🗗 🔀
Define Set	tings Op	peration
Add	Value	
B0000	1	
D0000	80	
D0001	0	
D0002	0	
J		

#### 13.7 Convert Application

This utility allows you to convert the application of one product into the other product.

Any HIMOS application can be converted into HIMOS application.

To convert an application select Utilities | Convert Application menu option.

Utilities	Help
On Li	ne Ladder Monitor
On Li	ne Screen Monitor
Displa	ay Logged Data
Font	Editor
Image	e Conversion to bmp
HIMC	95 Memory Status
Clear	Picture Library
Conv	ert Application

When you click on "Convert application" tool, it displays the list of other products in which application can be converted.

Convert Application	×
Select Product	
HI411-1208-0601-U-B-*-00 HI410-1612-0000-B-*-00	
HI412-1612-0200-U-B-*-00	
OK Cance	3

Select the desired product and click on OK. It will ask for the confirmation and converts the application.



#### 13.8 Ethernet Settings

As **HI576 & HI1202** supports Ethernet port, Ethernet settings are applicable only for **HI576 & HI1202** units. To download default Ethernet settings from HIMOS configuration software, select **Communicate | Ethernet Setting** menu option as shown below.



When user selects the above option, following window will appear.

3M Port :	
nit IP Address :	192 . 168 . 0 . 62
nit Download Port	: 5000
ubnet Mask :	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
efault Gateway :	192 . 168 . 0 . 2
	Download

**IBM Port:** This is PC's serial port used for downloading the settings.

**HIMOS IP Address:** HIMOS IP address is default IP address of the unit. If DHCP (**D**ynamis **H**ost **C**onfiguration **P**rotocol) server is not present in the network this IP will get assigned to the unit. If DHCP is present in the network, unit will get the IP address assigned by the server, which will be displayed on the unit at power on.

**HIMOS Download Port:** HIMOS Download Port is a port number on which unit's download server will be configured. User should use this port number for downloading the functionality. Upload server will be automatically configured as Download Port number plus 1. For example if HIMOS download port is 5000, then 5000 port will be used for downloading and 5001 will be used for uploading.

Subnet Mask: Subnet Mask should be filled according to the network configuration.

Default Gateway: Default Gateway should be filled according to the network configuration.
Now click on Download button, to download the Ethernet setting into the unit. While downloading settings following error may occur.

### 1. Can not open COM port.

Check if COM port is already used by some other application.

### 2. No response for startup signal.

Check if the serial cable is properly connected to the unit.

### 3. Error in applying settings. Try again!

Some error in applying settings, try again.

**Note:** If default IP address given to the unit is already in use in the network, Then unit will not be able to communicate over Ethernet port. (Because of IP conflict). If so, the error message of "IP Conflict " will be displayed at the power On. Ask your network administrator for the above addresses

### Mode of Communication

Mode of communication between HIMOS configuration software and HIMOS unit can be:

1. IBM Serial Port

2. Ethernet Port (Only if HIMOS unit supports Ethernet port)

To download / upload over Ethernet port, select the Communicate | Communicate Mode menu option as shown below

Communicate	Utilities	Help
Communicat	ion Port	
Download		
Upload		
Ethernet Se	ttings	
Communicat	ion Mode	

After selecting Communication Mode option, following screen will display.

Communication Mode
Mode
C Serial
Ethernet
<u> </u>

### **Downloading to HIMOS unit**

When user clicks 'Download' button from Tool station, a DOS window appears for moment to link PLC drivers with firmware as per application.

Unit IP Address :	192 . 168 . 0 . 0
Unit download port :	5000
Download Options :	Firmware
	Firmware Application Font Ladder Application + Ladder

HIMOS IP Address : This is the IP address of HIMOS unit.

**HIMOS download Port :** This is the port number on which HIMOS download server is configured. (This is done when default settings are downloaded to unit through Ethernet settings serially.)

Download Option : User has to select proper option to download

- 1. Application
- 2. Firmware
- 3. Font
- 4. Ladder
- 5. Application + Ladder

Download Button : Click this button to start the downloading.

While downloading following errors may occur.

### 1. WSAStartup failed.

Operating system is not allowing network related programs to run (may be some security feature).

### 2. Allocating socket failed.

Operating system is not allowing network related programs to run (may be some security feature).

### 3 Unit with selected IP Address is not found in the Network.



#### IP address entered is wrong.

### 4 Sending data to the server failed / No data is received receive failed.

While transferring the file to unit for each frame, unit sends acknowledgment, sending or receiving data from PC failed. Check if the existing network is working or Ethernet cable connection.

### 5. Product mismatch.

Check the product you have selected in configuration software and the one you are using.

### 6. File Not Found.

File to be transmitted is not found. Files are not created properly, contact DITEL Customer support.

#### **Uploading from HIMOS unit**

When user clicks "Upload' button from Tool station the following window will display.

Unit Upload Port : 5001 Jpload Options : Application Application Application + Logged data		
Ipload Options : Application Application Application + Logged data	it upload Port :	5001
Application + Logged data	load Options :	Application
		Application Application + Logged data

1. HIMOS IP Address : This is the IP address of HIMOS unit.

**2. HIMOS Upload Port :** This the port number on which HIMOS Upload server is configured. (This is done when default settings are downloaded to unit through Ethernet settings serially. This port is always equal to Download port +1.)

3. Upload Option : User has to select proper option to upload

- 1. Application
- 2. Application + Logged Data

While uploading following errors may occur.

#### 1 WSAStartup failed.

Operating system is not allowing network related programs to run (may be some security feature).

#### 2 Allocating socket failed.

Operating system is not allowing network related programs to run (may be some security feature).

### 3 Unit with selected IP Address is not found in the Network.

Error		×
Unit with select	d IP Address is not found in the Netwo	ık.
	ОК	

IP address entered is wrong.

### 4 Sending data to the server failed / No data is received receive failed.

While transferring the file to unit for each frame, unit sends acknowledgment, sending or receiving data from PC failed. Check if the existing network is working or Ethernet cable connection.

### 5. Product mismatch.

Check the product you have selected in configuration software and the one you are using.

### 6. File Not Found.

File to be transmitted is not found. Files are not created properly, contact DITEL, Customer support.

#### Notes:

- 1. For connecting unit and the PC point to point, use standard Ethernet cross over cable.
- 2. For connecting unit and PC through the switch, use standard Ethernet straight through cable.
- 3. For Point to point communication over Ethernet, PC should be given static IP address.

### To set the IP address Of PC

If you are connecting PC and HIMOS unit with cross cable or if you don't have DHCP or BOOTP server in the network, you have to configure network settings of your PC.

Follow the procedure to configure the Network settings of PC.

- 1. Click on Start, select Control Panel | Network Connections option.
- 2. Right click on the Local Area Connection. Select Properties and following window will appear.
- 3. Select Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and Click on Properties

🕹 Local Area Connection Properties 🛛 🔹 🔀
General Authentication Advanced
Connect using:
Intel(R) PRO/100 VE Network Conne  Configure
This connection uses the following items:
<ul> <li>Client for Microsoft Networks</li> <li>File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks</li> <li>QoS Packet Scheduler</li> <li>Thternet Protocol (TCP/IP)</li> </ul>
I <u>n</u> stall <u>U</u> ninstall P <u>r</u> operties
Description Allows your computer to access resources on a Microsoft network.
Show icon in notification area when connected Notify me when this connection has limited or no connectivity
OK Cancel

4. Following window will appear.

Internet	Protocol (TCP/IP)	Propertie	s			? 🔀
General	Alternate Configuration	า				
You car this cap the app	n get IP settings assigne ability. Otherwise, you n ropriate IP settings.	ed automatic leed to ask y	ally if y our ne	our net twork a	work su administr	pports ator for
<u>o Ot</u>	otain an IP address auto	matically				
	e the following IP addre	ess:				
<u>I</u> P ad	ldress:		it.			
Subr	net mask:			10	¥3	
Defa	ult gateway:		÷	-	- 44	
<u>⊙</u> 0 <u>i</u>	gtain DNS server addres	ss automatica	ally			
-OU:	e the following DNS se	rver address	es:			
Erefe	rred DNS server:		12	- 11	- 12	
Alten	hate DNS server:				88	
					Adva	inced
				OK		Cancel

5. Click on 'Use the following IP address' radio button.

Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Pro	perties 🛛 🛛 🔀			
General				
You can get IP settings assigned au this capability. Otherwise, you need the appropriate IP settings.	utomatically if your network supports to ask your network administrator for			
Obtain an IP address automatically				
Ose the following IP address:				
IP address:	x 0 4			
S <u>u</u> bnet mask:	(x, x) x)			
Default gateway:	2 2 2			
Obtain DNS server address au	Itomatically			
Output the following DNS server	addresses:			
Preferred DNS server:				
Alternate DNS server:				
	Ad <u>v</u> anced			
	OK Cancel			

6. Fill the IP address, Subnet mask and Default Gateway in such a way that unit and PC will be in the same network. For example if you using Class C network and unit's default settings are

IP Address : 192.168.0.62 Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0 Default Gateway : 192.168.0.1

Then PC settings should be IP Address : 192.168.0.x Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0 Default Gateway : 192.168.0.1

Where  $\mathbf{x}$  can be any number between 0 to 254 other than 62 and 1. As these addresses are already used by unit and gateway. The window is shown below.

nternet Protocol (TCP/IP	) Properties 🛛 🛜
General	
You can get IP settings assig this capability. Otherwise, you the appropriate IP settings.	ned automatically if your network supports I need to ask your network administrator for
O <u>O</u> btain an IP address au	itomatically
Ose the following IP add	
<u>I</u> P address:	192.168.0.65
S <u>u</u> bnet mask:	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
Default gateway:	192.168.0.1
O Obtain DNS server addr	ess automatically
• Use the following DNS s	erver addresses:
Preferred DNS server:	
Alternate DNS server:	
	Ad <u>v</u> anced
	OK Cancel

Then click on OK button to save the settings.

## Miscellaneous

7. To check whether the unit and pc are in the same network go to command prompt.

(To go command prompt run "cmd" command from start menu.) Type "**ping 192.168.0.62**" (unit's IP address) and if you get reply then both PC and unit are connected.

C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe	- 🗆	×
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600] (C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.		-
C:\Documents and Settings\user>ping 192.168.0.42		
Pinging 192.168.0.42 with 32 bytes of data:		
Reply from 192.168.0.42: bytes=32 time=2ms TTL=255 Reply from 192.168.0.42: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=255 Reply from 192.168.0.42: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=255 Reply from 192.168.0.42: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=255		
Ping statistics for 192.168.0.42: Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss), Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds: Minimum = 1ms, Maximum = 2ms, Average = 1ms		
C:\Documents and Settings\user>		
		-

## **DIAGNOSTICS & MAINTENANCE**

In this chapter. . . .

- Diagnostics
- Maintenance

## 14.1 Diagnostics

### 14.1.1 Erase Keys

### 1. Erase keys for Touch Screen HIMOS Models:

In some cases it may be necessary to erase firmware and/or application. Procedures for erasing firmware and application is given below:



### 1. Erasing Application For HI41X and HI120X Models:

- 1. At power ON, press the top right corner of the HIMOS screen for 2 seconds.
- 2. Following message is displayed:
  - "Erase Application?? Press Bottom Right corner to confirm.."
- 3. Now Press Bottom right corner to confirm Application erase.
- 4. After application erase is complete following message is displayed:
  - "No setup loaded. Download Application."

### 2. Erasing Application For HI57X:

- 1. At power ON, press the top right corner of the HIMOS screen for 6 to 10 seconds till the GREEN LED gets on. At that time, you release the top right corner.
- 2. A message will then appear, asking you to press the bottom right corner as a confirmation to erase application.
- 3. Then press bottom right of touch screen as a confirmation for Application Erase.
- 4. Green LED will turn off.
- 5. This completes the application erase procedure

### 3. Erasing Firmware For HI41X and HI120X Models:

- 1. At power ON, press the bottom left corner of the HIMOS screen for 2 seconds.
- 2. Following message is displayed:
  - "Erase Firmware?? Press Bottom Right corner to confirm.."
    - Now Press Bottom right corner to confirm Firmware erase.
- 4. After firmware erase is complete following message is displayed: **"No firmware. Download Firmware.."**

### 4. Erasing Firmware For HI57X:

3.

- 1. At power ON, press the bottom left corner of the HIMOS screen for 6 to 10 seconds till the GREEN LED turns on. At that time, you release the top right corner.
- 2. Press the bottom right corner to confirm Firmware erase. GREEN LED will flash and turn off.
- 3. This completes the firmware erase procedure.

If unit stops functioning totally please follow steps given below to recover the unit:

- Erase application.
- Download a demo application. If unit functions properly, maybe the application previously downloaded was wrong.
- If unit still fails to function properly, erase firmware. Download firmware and application again.

### 2 Erase Keys for Keypad based HIMOS Units:

HI12X	Application	At Power On: Press '<- (Left Arrow) ' Key and then press 'F4' key	
11112/	Firmware	At Power On: Press 'NEXT' Key and then press 'F4'.	
111201/	Application	At Power On: Press 'F2' and then press 'ENT' key.	
	Firmware	At Power On: Press 'F1' and then press 'ENT' key.	

## 14.1.2 Touchscreen calibration

Touch screens are factory calibrated. Calibration is stored in a Flash memory. If user faces any of the following problems:

- Any press inside defined object boundary results in three short beeps.
- Undefined area performs a task of some other defined object.

User will have to calibrate the touch screen of the unit. Steps for calibrating the touch screen for HIMOS models are as below:

- 1. At power ON, press the center of the HIMOS screen for more than 2 to 3 seconds.
- 2. A cross is shown at the bottom left corner. This cross remains on the screen for approximately 6 seconds. If center of the cross is not pressed in this time, HIMOS resumes normal operation. Touch the center of the cross with a pointed object (stylus recommended).
- 3. You will get a next screen showing a cross at the top right of the screen. Again this cross remains on the screen for approximately 6 seconds. If center of the cross is not pressed in this time, HIMOS resumes normal operation. Touch the center of the cross with a pointed object (stylus recommended). The screen has now been calibrated.
- 4. Unit will be restarted. Normal function of the HIMOS can now resume.

### 14.2 Maintenance

- 14.2.1 Clean all sides of the unit using a isopropyl alcohol solution. Use a clean, soft piece of cloth. Do not use a rough cloth as it may produce scratches on the unit. Take proper care while cleaning the keypad of the unit, especially the LCD window. Also take care that the LCD window does not come in contact with the material that has an abrasive surface.
- 14.2.2. Do not use benzene, paint thinner or other volatile solvents. Do not use any chemically treated cloth, wipes, or rags.
- 14.2.3. Tighten the mounting brackets evenly. Make sure the panel is not dirty or warped and that it is strong enough to hold the unit.
- 14.2.4. Please note keys on the keypad are only for finger operation. They should not be pressed with pointed tools or any other such items. This will cause key failure or other malfunctioning may occur. Do not apply a force any greater that 30 Newton's to the keys.
- 14.2.5. Always tighten the connector screws after connecting the communication cables.
- 14.2.6. The maximum pull load for cables is 30 Newton's. Do not apply loads greater than this.
- 14.2.7 Do not use sharp objects for pressing any touch screen key.

## **APPENDIX**

In this chapter. . . .

- Communication Cable Diagrams
- IBM Cables
- List of features
- List of Supported Devices
- Technical Support



2





4





6 BAUMULLER DRIVE(RS485 4-WIRE) TO HIMOS UNIT



7 BAUMULLER DRIVE(RS485 2-WIRE) TO HIMOS UNIT







## 10 DELTA TO HIMOS UNIT(EC-P-044-00)



11 FATEK PLC TO HIMOS UNIT





## 13 GE90 SERIES SNP-X PLC TO HIMOS UNIT







15 IDEC MICROSMART PLC TO HIMOS UNIT



16





18

LG MASTER K SERIES PLC TO HIMOS UNIT **HIMOS SIDE** LG MASTER PLC SIDE 2 mtr. TTACH TIND ЫС **DB9 MALE** DB9 MALE Shield Wire (RS232) (RS232) SIGNALS Pin # Pin # SIGNALS 1 1 RXD 2 2 TXD TXD 3 3 RXD 4 4 SG 5 5 SG 6 6 7 7 8 8 9 9 Shield Wire **DB9 MALE** PINOUTS







21 **MITUBISHI FX SERIES PLC TO HIMOS UNIT** 



25.

## 22 MITUBISHI FX0 PLC TO HIMOS UNIT








25















31







B IBM Cables

1 IBM Cable for HIMOS



## C List Of Features

The next chapter will guide you through the creation of your first project. Before you proceed, you may wish to read this brief list of some of the features offered in the HIMOS.

ICON	NAME	DESCRPITION
	Data Entry	Edits any register or coil from the PLC using HIMOS Keypad.
t	Display Data	Displays the text depending on the bit status or the value of the PLC Data register.
O	Time	Displays the time in the format HH:MM:SS or HH:MM
[22]	Date	Displays date in the format DD/MM/YY or in MM/DD/YY
<u></u>	Alarm	Displays the alarm text when alarm occurs
	Bit Button	Performs the key's specific task or screen tasks.
-1°-	Word Button	performs a set of tasks based on the number of logical states defined in the configuration
<u>`@</u> :	Bit Lamp	Lamp object can be used as state indicator for display ing state of PLC coil
<u>w</u>	Word lamp	performs a set of tasks based on the number of logical states defined in the configuration
	Single Bargraph	Changes the bar height/width according to the value in the PLC register
	Multiple Bargraph	Changes the bar height/width according to the value in the PLC register
~	Analog Meter	Changes its needle position according to the value of PLC register

ICON	NAME	DESCRPITION
	Numeric Keypad	Enters decimal or hex data into the register or 1 or 0 into the coil.
	Bitmap	Used to draw bmp images on the HIMOS display
¢	All Screens	Shows the list of available screens
翱	Screen Task List	Shows the task list of the screen.
	UNIT Settings	Defines HIMOS unit's hardware configuration settings
	Network Configuration	Defines protocol on both the ports COM1 and COM2
P.	Tags	It is the central database for the tags that need to be used in the application
G	Global keys	Tasks defined under this option are executed for whole application
F	Function keys	Using this screen macros of task can be defined for Global keys.
<b>B</b>	Application Task List	Defines the tasks for the application
모1	Download Application	Downloads the application & firmware in the HIMOS unit
	Upload Application	Uploads application from the HIMOS memory
	Trend	Shows graphical representation of tag against real time

ICON	NAME	DESCRIPTION
***	Historical Trend	Shows graphical representation of tag against time
	Ladder Logic Block	Used to create ladder for the application
128	High speed Counter / Interrupt	Can be used for applications like Rate measurement Totalizer
X	High Speed Timer	Allows a ladder program to be executed in parallel to the main program.
Ĩ	Data Logger	Locks the data in the HIMOS's memory
$\oplus$	PID Block	Observes the error and decides the correction factor
	16 Point Linearization	Enables user to linearize the non linear variable
лл	Time Proportional PWM	Used to encode Analog signal levels digitally
4	Pulse Output	Can be used for motor control applications

## D List of Supported Devices

Sr No	PLC	
1	Allen Bradley DF1	
2	Aromat FP Series	
3	Animatics	
4	Universal serial driver	
5	Control Techniques	
6	Danfoss drive	
7	Delta	
8	Fatek Plcs	
9	GE-90 Series	
10	GE-90 series SNP-X	
11	Idec PLCs	
12	Keyence KV Series	
13	Koyo DL205	
14	LG Master-K 300S	
15	LG MASTER-K Series PLCs	
16	Mitsubishi FX	
17	Modbus( Unit as Master)	
18	Modbus ( Unit as Slave)	
19	Renu Electronics	
20	Omron/Yaskawa Inverters	
21	GE Micro	
22	Siemens Step-7 Micro	
23	Siemens-S7 300 Series PLCs	
24	Toshiba T Series	
25	Toshiba (Link Port) Series PLCs	
26	Toshiba Inverters	
27	Toshiba ASD's	
28	Unitelway (07\37\57)PLCs	
29	Yokogawa PLC	
30	Twido PLC	

## E Technical Support



Ditel Support : Phone : (00 34) 93 339 47 58 E-mail : <u>himos@ditel.es</u>

Address: DITEL (Diseños y Tecnología, S.A.) Poligono Industrial Les Guixeres C/ Xarol, 8-C 08915 Badalona, SPAIN

## FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

In this chapter. . . .

Frequently Asked Questions

## 16.1 Frequently Asked Questions

This chapter answers the questions users often ask.

## 1. What is a normal voltage of battery?

The normal voltage of battery is from 2.2 V to 3.3 V.

### 2. What is expected life of battery?

The life of battery is typically 5 years in OFF condition. (See Specification of HIMOS)

### 3. Can battery be replaced? If yes, how?

There is no socket used for battery. User can replace the battery by disoldering it on his own risk.

### 4. How do I read PLC data?

To read any PLC data, the required tag should be defined in the **Tag Database**. In a screen the tag should be embedded in the required format.

### 5. Can I edit PLC data? How?

Any PLC register / coil can be edited except for 'Read only' registers / coils. Generally System registers and Input coils are 'Read only'. 'Read only' registers / coils vary from PLC to PLC. Please refer to PLC manual for details. To edit any PLC data define the tag in Tag Database. Place a 'Data Entry' object in a screen. Make sure to define the required keys.

### 6. Can I keep a record of the Process data?

HIMOS model can send screen data (Alphanumeric data only) on its serial port. This output can be given to a serial printer and a record of events can be achieved. A screen with 'Print Data' task can print all the alphanumeric objects.

### 7. Can I change screens using PLC logic?

Any PLC tag can be copied to STR, a system register internal to HIMOS, and HIMOS will display the corresponding screen. User must define the task 'Copy tag to STR' in Global Application Task-List. Make sure to define screens to all the possible values of the tag to avoid 'Screen not defined' message. Please note that the 'Goto screen', 'Goto next screen' and 'Goto previous screen' tasks will not work in this case. To change the screen the value of the PLC data should be changed.

#### 8. How do I keep any screen or any key locked?

Any screen or a key can be kept secret using the 'Password' feature of HIMOS. Password protected screen will not be displayed till the user enters the correct password. Similarly task for password protected key will not be performed till user enters the correct password.

## 9. How can I 'Hold' any Bit on or off using a key?

To hold a bit on using a key, define 'Turn bit on' task in 'Key press task-list' and 'Turn bit off' task in 'Release key task-list' for the same key.

## 10. Can I assign scaling factor for any tag?

Value of any tag can be converted in to the required format by performing 'Math Operations' on it. This DOES not change the value of the actual tag. 'Math Operations' can be performed in 'Display HIMOS / PLC Data' objects. Data to be written to a tag can also be manipulated by assigning 'Math Operations' in 'Data Entry' object.

## 11. Can I limit the data to be entered in a tag?

Data entered in any register tag can have high and low limits. This keeps a check on the register limits.